TEXT IS FLY AND LIGHT WITHIN THE BOOK ONLY

UNIVERSAL
LIBRARY

OU_156319

UNIVERSAL
LIBRARY

The University Tutorial Series.

Editions of Latin and Greek Classics.

(Introduction, Text, and Notes).

Aeschylus — Eumenides, 3/6; Persae, 3/6; Prometheus, 2/6; Septem contra Thebas, 3/6.

Aristophanes—Ranae, 3/6.

Caesar—Gallic War, Bks. 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, (each) 1/6; Gallic War, Bk. 1, Ch. 1-29, 1/6; Gallic War, Bk. 7, 2/6; Gallic War, Bk. 7, Ch. 1-68, 1/6; Invasion of Britain (IV. 20-V. 23), 2/6.

Cicero—Ad Atticum, Bk. 4, 3/6; De Amicitia, 1/6; De Finibus, Bk. 1, 2/6; De Finibus, Bk. 2, 3/6; De Officiis, Bk. 3, 3/6; Philippic II., 3/6; Pro Cluentio, 3/6; Pro Milone, 3/6; Pro Plancio, 2/6; De Senectute, In Catilinam I., Pro Archia, Pro Balbo, Pro Marcello, (each Book) 1/6.

Demosthenes—Androtion, 4/6.

Euripides—Alcestis, 3/6; Andromache, 3/6; Bacchae, 3/6; Hecuba, 3/6; Hippolytus, 3/6; Medea, 3/6.

Herodotus—Bk. 3, 4/6; Bk. 4, Ch. 1-144, 4/6; Bk. 6, 2/6; Bk. 8, 3/6.

Homer—Iliad, Bk. 24, 3/6; Odyssey, Bks. 9, 10, 2/6; Odyssey, Bks. 11, 12, 2/6; Odyssey, Bks. 13, 14, 2/6; Odyssey, Bk. 17, 1/6.

Horace—Epistles, 3/6; Epodes' 1/6; Odes, 3/6; Odes, (each Book) 1/6; Satires, 4/6.

Isocrates—De Bigis, 2/6.

Juvenal—Satires, 1, 3, 4, 3/6; Satires, 8, 10, 13, 2/6; Satires, 11, 13, 14, 3/6.

Livy—Bks. 1, 5, 21, 22, (each) 2/6; Bks. 3, 6, 9, (each) 3/6; Bk. 21, Ch. 1-30, 1/6.

Lucian—Charon and Timon, 3/6.

Lysias—Eratosthenes and Agoratus, 3/6.

Nepos—Hannibal, Cato, Atticus, 1/0.

Ovid—Fasti, Bks. 3, 4, 2/6; Heroides, 1, 5, 12, 1/6; Metamorphoses, Bk. 1, 1-150, 1/6, Bk. 3, 1-130, 1/6; Bks. 11, 13, 14, (each) 1/6; Tristia, Bk. 1, 3, (each) 1/6.

Plato—Apology, Ion, Laches, Phaedo, (each) 3/6; Euthyphro and Menexenus, 4/6.

Sallust—Catiline, 2/6.

Sophocles—Ajax, 3/6; Antigone, 2/6; Electra, 3/6.

Tacitus—Annals, Bk. 1, 3/6; Annals, Bk. 2, 2/6; Histories, Bk. 1, 3/6; Bk. 3, 3/6.

Terence—Adelphi, 3/6.

Thucydides—Bk. 7, 3/6.

Vergil—Aeneid, Books 1-12, (each) 1/6; Eclogues, 3/6; Georgics, Bks. 1, 2, 3/6; 1, 4, 3/6.

Xenophon—Anabasis, Bk. 1, 1/6; Bk. 4, 3/6; Cyropaedeia, Bk. 1, 3/6; Hellenica, Bk. 3, 3/6; Hellenica, Bk. 4, 3/6; Oeconomicus, 4/6.

A detailed catalogue of the above can be obtained on application.

The University Tutorial Series.

Vocabularies and Test Papers.

The VOCABULARY contains, arranged in the order of the Text, words with which the learner is likely to be unacquainted. The principal parts of verbs are given, and (when there is any difficulty about it) the parsing of the word as it occurs in the Text. The Vocabulary is interleaved with writing paper.

Two series of TEST PAPERS are, as a rule, provided, of which the first and easier series is devoted entirely to translation, accidence, and very elementary points of Syntax; the second, which is intended for use the last time the book is read through, deals with more advanced points.

ACTS OF APOSTLES, 1/0.

AESCHYLUS — Eumenides, 1/0; Septem contra Thebas, 1/0.

CAESAR—Gallic War, Bks. 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, (each book) 1/0; Gallic War, Bk. 7, 1/6; The Invasion of Britain, 1/6.

CICERO—De Amicitia, 1/0; De Officiis, Bk. 3, 1/0; De Senectute, 1/0; In Catilinam I., 1/0; In Catilinam III., 1/0; Philippic II., 1/0; Pro Archia, 1/0; Pro Balbo, 1/0; Pro Cluentio, 1/0; Pro Marcello, 1/0; Pro Milone, 1/0; Pro Plancio, 1/0.

EURIPIDES—Ion, Bacchae, Hippolytus, (each) 1/0.

HERODOTUS—Bks. 3, 4 (Ch. 1-144), 6, 8, (each) 1/0.

HOMER—Iliad, Bk. 6, 1/0; Odyssey, Bk. 17, 1/0.

HORACE—Epistles, 1/0; Odes, Bks. 1-4, each 1/0; Odes and Epodes (with Translation), 2/6; Satires, 1/0.

LIVY—Bks. 1, 3, 5, 6, 9, 21 (each) 1/0; Bk. 22, 1/6.

LYSIAS—Eratosthenes and Agoratus, 1/0.

OVID—Fasti, Bks. 3 and 4, 1/0; Heroides, 1, 2, 3, 5, 7, 12, 1/6; Metamorphoses, Bks. 11, 13, 14, each, 1/0; Tristia, Bks. 1, 3, each, 1/0.

PLATO—Euthyphro and Menexenus, 1/0; Ion, 1/0; Laches, 1/0.

SALLUST—Catiline, 1/6.

SOPHOCLES—Ajax, 1/0; Antigone, 1/0; Electra, 1/0.

TACITUS—Annals, Bk. 1, 1/0; Histories, Bk. 1, †Bk. 3, (each) 1/0.

VERGIL—Aeneid, Bks. 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, each, 1/0; 9, 10 (together), 1/0; Eclogues, 1/0; Georgics, Bks. 1, 2, 1/0; Bks. 1, 4, 1/0.

XENOPHON—Anabasis, Bk. 1, 1/0; Cyropaedeia, Bks. 1 and 5, (each) 1/0; Oeconomicus, 1/0.

Notabilia.

ARISTOPHANES—Vespae, 1/0.

CICERO — Pro Roscio Amerino, 1/0.

DEMOSTHENES—Leptines, 1/0.

PLATO—Gorgias, 1/0.

TERENCE—Phormio, 1/0.

THUCYDIDES—Book 1, 1/6.

A detailed catalogue of the above can be obtained on application.

The University Tutorial Series.

CLASSICAL EDITOR: B. J. HAYES, M.A.

CAESAR: GALLIC WAR, BOOK V.

Editions of Latin and Greek Classics.

(INTRODUCTION, TEXT, AND NOTES.)

AESCHYLUS — Eumenides, 3/6; Persae, 3/6; Prometheus, 2/6; Septem contra Thebas, 3/6.

ARISTOPHANES — Ranae, 3/6.

CAESAR—Civil War, Bk. 1, 1/6; Gallic War, Bks. 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, (each) 1/6; Gallic War, Bk. 1, Ch. 1-29, 1/6; Gallic War, Bk. 7, 2/6; Gallic War, Bk. 7, Ch. 1-68, 1/6; Invasion of Britain (IV. 20-V. 23), 2/6.

CICERO — Ad Atticum, Bk. 4, 3/6; De Amicitia, 1/6; De Finibus, Bk. 1, 2/6; De Finibus, Bk. 2, 3/6; De Officiis, Bk. 3, 3/6; Philippic II., 3/6; Pro Cluentio, 3/6; Pro Milone, 3/6; Pro Plancio, 2/6; De Senectute, In Catilinam I., Pro Archia, Pro Balbo, Pro Marcello, (each Book) 1/6.

DEMOSTHENES — Androtion, 4/6.

EURIPIDES—Alcestis, 3/6; Andromache, 3/6; Bacchae, 3/6; Hecuba, 3/6; Hippolytus, 3/6; Medea, 3/6.

HERODOTUS — Bk. 3, 4/6; Bk. 4, Ch. 1-144, 4/6; Bk. 6, 2/6; Bk. 8, 3/6.

HOMER — Iliad, Bk. 24, 3/6; Odyssey, Bks. 9, 10, 2/6; Odyssey, Bks. 11, 12, 2/6; Odyssey, Bks. 13, 14, 2/6; Odyssey, Bk. 17, 1/6.

HORACE — Epistles, 3/6; Epodes, 1/6; Odes, 3/6; Odes, (each Book) 1/6; Satires, 4/6.

ISOCRATES—De Bigis, 2/6.

JUVENAL—Satires, 1, 3, 4, 3/6, Satires, 8, 10, 13, 2/6; Satires, 11, 13, 14, 3/6.

LIVY—Bks. 1, 5, 21, 22, (each) 2/6; Bks. 3, 6, 9, (each) 3/6; Bk. 21, Ch. 1-30, 1/6.

LUCIAN — Charon and Timon, 3/6.

LYSIAS — Eratosthenes and Agoratus, 3/6.

NEPOS — Hannibal, Cato, Atticus, 1/0.

OVID — Fasti, Bks. 3, 4, 2/6; Heroides, 1, 5, 12, 1/6; Metamorphoses, Bk. 1, 1-150, 1/6, Bk. 3, 1-130, 1/6; Bks. 11, 13, 14, (each) 1/6; Tristia, Bk. 1, 3, (each) 1/6.

PLATO — Apology, Ion, Laches, Phaedo, (each) 3/6; Euthyphro and Menexenus, 4/6.

SALLUST—Catiline, 2/6.

SOPHOCLES—Ajax, 3/6; Antigone, 2/6; Electra, 3/6.

TACITUS—Annals, Bk. 1, 3/6; Annals, Bk. 2, 2/6; Histories, Bk. 1, 3/6; Bk. 3, 3/6.

TERENCE — Adelphi, 3/6.

THUCYDIDES—Bk. 7, 3/6.

VERGIL—Aeneid, Books 1-12, (each) 1/6; Eclogues, 3/6; Georgics, Bks. 1, 2, 3/6; 1, 4, 3/6.

XENOPHON—Anabasis, Bk. 1, 1/6; Bk. 4, 3/6; Cyropaedeia, Bk. 1, 3/6; Hellenica, Bk. 3, 3/6; Hellenica, Bk. 4, 3/6; Oeconomicus, 4/6.

A detailed catalogue of the above can be obtained on application.

The University Tutorial Series.

CAESAR:

GALLIC WAR, BOOK V.

EDITED BY

A. H. ALLCROFT, M.A. Oxon.,

AUTHOR OF "LATIN COMPOSITION," EDITOR OF VERGIL'S AENEID, HORACE' ODES, CICERO DE AMICITIA, DE SENECTUTE,

AND

W. F. MASOM, M.A. Lond. and Camb.,

FELLOW OF UNIVERSITY COLLEGE, LONDON.

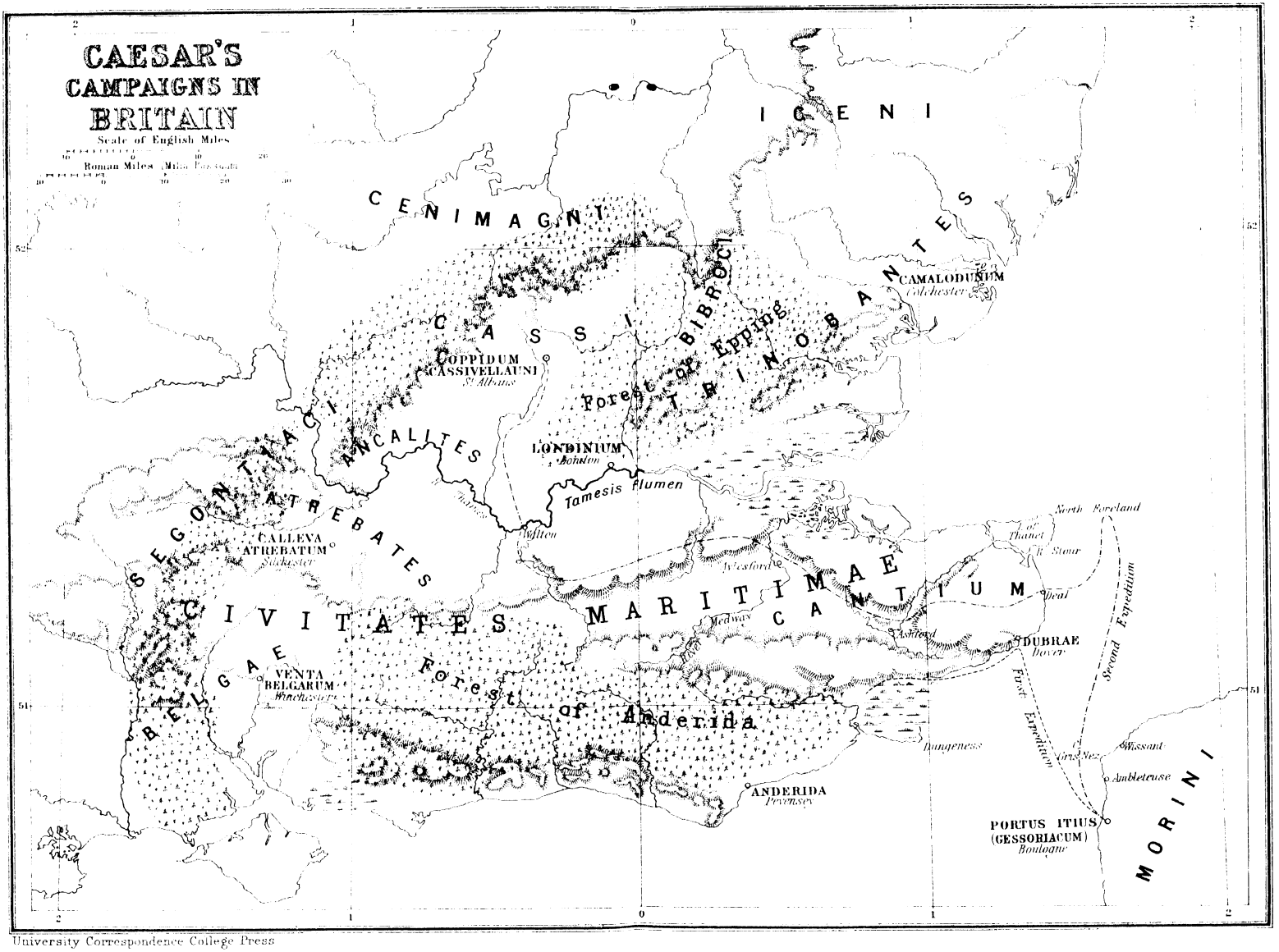
EDITOR OF LIVY III., V., VI., TACITUS' ANNALS I., II., TERENCE' ADELPHI.

London: W. B. CLIVE,

University Tutorial Press Ld.

(*University Correspondence College Press*),

157 Drury Lane, W.C.



University Correspondence College Press

INTRODUCTION.

§ 1. In the time of Caesar the Gauls occupied roughly the whole of that part of Europe which lies west of the Rhine and north of the Pyrenees, together with much of Switzerland, and that part of the Italian peninsula which lies to the north of the rivers Rubicon and Macra (thence called Gallia Cisalpina). They had once overrun the land as far as the Tiber, and had settled amongst the ruins of the Etruscan empire; but in the year 218 B.C. the Romans had planted the colonies of Placentia and Cremona as the symbol and safeguard of the reduction or expulsion of these Cisalpine Gauls. Just one hundred years later a colony was conducted to Narbo (*Narbonne*) by the Consul Marcius Rex, and this town became the capital of the province of Gallia Narbonensis. In the year 58 B.C. those Gauls who were still free were bounded on the south by a line drawn from the Lake of Geneva (*Lacus Lemannus*) to Toulouse (*Tolōsa*), and thereafter by the Pyrenees. Eastward they spread along the whole of the left bank of the Rhine from its mouth to Lake Constance (*L. Venĕtus*); and a line drawn from that point to the head-waters of the Rhone (*Rhodănus*) in Mount St. Gothard, and thence along the valley of that stream to Geneva, completes the frontier. To the north and west they extended to the sea. This wide region was Gallia Comata,—the land of the unconquered Gauls who still, in barbarian fashion, wore their hair unshorn,—so called to distinguish it from Gallia Brăccata, identical with Narbonensis, whose inhabitants had learnt to cut their hair, but still retained the national *braccae* or breeches. It is in the former sense that we shall use the name Gallia or Gaul.

The Gauls and their lands.

The people whom the Romans named Galli termed themselves Celts, that is "Men of the Forests"; and that portion of Gallia which was least accessible to foreign influences was hence named Celtica. It embraced the whole width of central Gaul from the Seine (*Sequăna*) to the Garonne (*Garumna*). Beyond the Seine lay Belgica, and south of the lower Garonne, as far as the Pyrenees, was Aquitania, which was on the east conterminous with Narbonensis. The Aquitāni were the least important of the peoples of Gallia, and gave little trouble to Cæsar. The Belgæ, on the other hand, were his most formidable adversaries. The Aduatŭci, between the Maas (*Mŏsa*) and Scheldt (*Scaldis*) were certainly German, and so perhaps were the Nervii further to the west; while the Usipĕtes, Tenctēri, and Sugambri, German tribes on the east bank of the Rhine, were continually seeking to cross that river. Higher up the Rhine, along the frontier of Gallia Celtica, there prevailed the same mixture of races; and tribes such as the Vangiŏnes and Nemetes occupied lands alike in Gallia and Germania, while the powerful Treveri, who have left their name to Trèves, were almost as much German as Celtic. Still higher up, the Raurĭci and Helvetii, both Celtic peoples, only maintained themselves by constant warfare against the Germans, whose nomad tribes were included by Cæsar in the common name of Suēbi or Suēvi (*i.e.* the Wanderers).

Gallia, though still covered in many parts with dense forests, especially in the northern parts and the Ardennes (*Arduenna Silva*), was yet as a whole a fertile land. Though the tillage of the soil was regarded with contempt, yet, in Celtic Gaul at least, it attained to some importance. But the farther the Gauls were removed from the influence of the Romans, the less inclined were they to these peaceful and sedentary pursuits, which indeed belonged entirely to the non-noble classes. Pastoral farming, and the breeding of cattle, pigs, and horses, were far more affected, and the nobles prided themselves on their horses.

The population was divided into three classes,—nobles, priests, and commoners or serfs. In earlier times each tribe had been governed by a king with the nominal aid of a council of the leading men (*principes*); but these, like

the barons of England, made themselves so powerful as frequently to neutralise, if not to destroy, the royal power. In some cases the king retained his title, but became merely the instrument of the council of nobles; in other cases his office was abolished, and in his place was elected annually a *Vergobrĕtus* or "Dealer of Justice," who was of course controlled by the nobles; and finally, about the time of Caesar's coming, the influence of Roman and Greek example in Narbonensis had produced a sort of democratic movement in many of the nearer tribes, with the result that both the king and the nobles had been overthrown by the commoners. The nobles had gained their influence by reducing the common people, originally free, to the condition of debtors and bondsmen, much as the patricians had done at Rome; while, as there was little law in the land, every poor man felt it advisable to attach himself as a client or retainer to some powerful chieftain who would give him protection in return for his support. Orgetorix the Helvetian had ten thousand such retainers, one-eighth of the whole military strength of the tribe. With such a retinue the noble was raised above the law. From resistance to the king he passed to contempt of the priests; and the latter revenged themselves by assisting the commoners, equally slighted, to overthrow the nobles. These priests were the Druids, an organised clergy who governed the people almost at will by aid of superstition. They professed to control the power of nature, the winds, thunder, and lightning; and they sacrificed human victims to propitiate these powers. They monopolised also all the education of the nation, and formed schools to which were collected the sons of the nobles for instruction. Amongst the subjects of their teaching were astronomy and the doctrine that the soul passes after death into another body.

When Caesar attacked Gaul it was torn with these internal struggles of upper and lower classes one against the other. There was no national unity. Each tribe or clan (*civitas*, *populus*), and there were more than sixty in Celtica alone, was independent of the others save when forced into vassalage to a more powerful neighbour. The only element of union was the Druidic system, which embraced the British

Islands and all Gaul in a common religious bond, and held every year a great convention near Chartres, to which representatives from the whole Gallic world were invited.

§ 2. Some time before 400 B.C. a horde of Gauls, mostly Senŏnes, left their settlements in Gallia and crossed the Alps into Italy. They occupied the lands afterwards called Cisalpine Gaul; crossed the Po (*Padus*), having by the sack of Melpum (near *Milan*) inflicted a ruinous blow on the Etruscan power (396 B.C.); defeated the Romans at the Battle of the Allia, and burnt Rome itself (390 B.C.). They withdrew again to the north of Italy, where they permanently settled, though they continued to make raids on southern and central Italy. As Rome's power recovered and spread, it came into constant collision with them. So in 361 Manlius won his surname of Torquatus from the *torques*, or gold necklet, which he took from a Gallic chief; in 350 Popilius Laenas defeated them while ravaging Latium; and Valerius earned the name of Corvinus in the next year. There followed fifty years of peace. Then the Etruscans and Umbrians, uniting with the Samnites in their third and last struggle, 298 B.C., summoned the Gauls again to arms. The Battle of Sentinum broke the league, 295 B.C.; and when in 284 B.C. the Senŏnes defeated the Romans at Arretium, the disaster was avenged by the victory of Lake Vadimo, the extirpation of the Senŏnes, and the occupation of their capital, Sena Gallica, as a colony, in 283 B.C. Forty-five years later (238 B.C.) the Boii rose anew, and the trouble, aggravated by a proposal to occupy their lands, culminated, after a disaster at Faesŭlae, in their utter defeat at Telamon (225 B.C.). The remaining tribes of the Cisalpine were subdued by Marcellus, who won from Viridomarus the Insubrian the last of the *Spolia Opima*. They arose once more to assist Hannibal; and after his defeat they still continued the struggle up to 191 B.C., when they made peace, retaining their independence and freedom on condition of protecting Rome's northern frontier.

Rome and the Gauls.

Meantime the security of the provinces of the two Spains required that Rome should open a safe land-route to the

Pyrenees. Her ally Massilia (*Marseilles*) was used to maintain this road, which skirted the coast from Pisae to the west, through the lands of the Ligurians. This people resisted stubbornly, but were conquered in detail, and their attacks upon Massilia itself only led to the appearance of the Romans in Transalpine Gaul, 154 B.C., as the protectors of that city.

About thirty years later the two leading tribes of Celtic Gaul, the Aedui (or Haedui) of the central highlands, and the Arverni, who lay in Auvergne to the south of the Aedui, were rivals for the headship of the Gallic states. The Aedui called in the help of Rome, and the Allobroges aided the Arverni. The allied Gauls were crushed on the Isara (*Isère*) by Fabius Maximus, and Cn. Domitius followed up this blow by a second at Vindalium, 121 B.C. The Arverni sued for peace, the condition of which was the recognition of the new province of Gallia Narbonensis, so named from the colony of Narbo. In 109 B.C. the Cimbri and Teutŏnes, German tribes, swept over all southern and central Gaul, and all but expelled the Romans by the Battle of Arausio, 105 B.C. Marius and Catulus saved their country by the victories of Aquae Sextiae (*Aix*), 102 B.C. and Vercellae, 101 B.C.

Gallia Narbonensis comprised the whole of the sea-coast from the Alps to the Pyrenees, while it stretched inland as far as Geneva on the one hand and Toulouse (*Tolosa*) on the other. Its frontier was, roughly speaking, the Rhone beyond Lyons, the Cevennes (*Cebenna*), and the Tarn (*Tarnis*). Westward it marched with Aquitania. Here dwelt the Galli Braccati, and the country came to be spoken of as simply *the* Provincia. It is thus that Caesar used that word. The coast had long been colonised by Greek settlers, of whom the Massiliots were the chief; its inhabitants had acquired considerable culture from these settlers, who developed trade, agriculture, and the arts of writing and coining. Hence the rapidity with which they became Romanised. In 58 B.C. the Provincia was scarcely less Roman than was Campania.

Left to themselves the free Gauls still wasted their strength in quarrels. The Arverni united with the Sequăni to resist

the Aedui, who interfered with both; and they called in the aid of the Germans under Ariovistus, 71 B.C. Thereupon the Aedui were forced to make peace, as they could get no help from the Romans, despite the prayers of Divitiacus, but Ariovistus found Gaul too attractive to be left. He demanded lands for his followers, invited fresh bodies of Germans across the Rhine, and was in a fair way by 60 B.C. to found a German empire in Gallia itself. His success aroused the German tribes along the entire line of the Rhine. There was every prospect that Gallia would become a German conquest if Rome did not interfere to prevent it. The Romans remembered the attacks of the Cimbri and Teutŏnes: on this occasion it seemed wiser to stay the oncoming barbarians at once. The Rhine offered a natural and defensible frontier; so that, apart from the need of maintaining the coast-route to Spain, the conquest of Gaul was necessary to secure Italy from the Germans. To these reasons of policy was added a third, the known wealth and fertility of Gaul. The commercial world of Rome, the *Equites*, saw in it a new field for money-getting. Lastly Caesar saw here the means of recruiting and training for himself an army sufficiently powerful to counterbalance that of Pompeius, his rival; gold enough to buy support in the Senate and amongst the city-voters; glory which should leave in the shade the victories of Pompeius in Asia.

Life of Caesar.

§ 3. Gaius Julius Caesar was born July 12th, 100 B.C. His *gens* was one of the oldest and noblest in Rome, but he was connected from the first with the popular or democratic party of Marius and Cinna. He was, by marriage, nephew of the former, son-in-law of the latter. He was too young to take part in the civil troubles of 88-83 B.C.; but when Sulla, the Optimate, seized the dictatorship in the latter year, and restored in full the government of the nobles, he showed his distrust of Caesar by bidding him put away his wife Cornelia, the daughter of L. Cinna, now dead. Caesar refused and fled from Rome, passing ultimately to Asia, where he served with distinction in various small undertakings, and at

Mytilene, in 80 B.C., won the "civic wreath" by saving the life of a fellow *civis*. Sulla died 78 B.C., and Caesar at once returned to Rome, where he devoted himself to the usual course of rhetoric and law-pleading by which young Romans won their way into public life. His studies took him to Rhodes; he was captured by Cilician pirates *en route*; was ransomed by his friends; and, manning a few vessels, returned to capture and crucify the offenders. About 68 B.C. he came forward more prominently as the champion of the party of Marius, whom he delighted by exhibiting the image of their old leader and by restoring his trophies (65 B.C.). In 68 B.C. he was Quaestor. He won great popularity by his munificence as Aedile, 65 B.C. In 62 B.C. he held the office of Praetor, and next year went as Propractor to Spain, where he conquered the Lusitani and Celtiberi of the extreme north-west. Returning in 60 B.C. he found Pompeius powerless, and combined with him and Crassus, the leader of the *Equites* or rich merchant class, in the First Triumvirate. This was a coalition to give to each member what he aimed at in politics: Crassus gained privileges for the *Equites*; Pompeius secured lands in Campania for his discharged soldiery; Caesar acquired the consulate of 59 B.C. and a special military command (by the *Lex Vatinia*) for five years in Illyricum and Cisalpine Gaul, with a force of three legions. All these measures were carried by the people in defiance of the Senate; and the latter body itself added to Caesar's commission the Provincia, or Narbonese Gaul, with another legion, owing to the threatening movements of the Helvetii (see § 5) and of the German tribes under Ariovistus. From 58 to 49 B.C. Caesar was occupied in the conquest of Gaul (§ 5), his five years' command being prolonged by the *Lex Licinia-Pompeia* in 55 B.C. for an equal period. During these years Crassus fell at Carrhae in Parthia, and Pompeius, having grown jealous of Caesar, gradually went over to the Senatorial side. His endeavours to deprive Caesar of his command were at once illegal and blundering; Caesar adhered strictly to the law while he could, and only took up arms in 49 B.C. to defend his certain rights and those of the tribunes who supported him. Thus began the Civil

War. In two months Pompeius was driven from Italy and Caesar was master of Rome. The victory of Ilerda secured Spain. The year 48 B.C. saw Pompeius defeated at Pharsalus and assassinated at Alexandria, whither Caesar followed him. He settled Egypt and Asia in 47 B.C., defeated the Senatorial party once more at Thapsus, in Africa, 46 B.C., and finally crushed the last of the Pompeian armies at Munda, in Spain, 45 B.C. Already in 49 B.C. Caesar had been declared Dictator; in 48 B.C. this office was prolonged for an indefinite time. He held the office until his death in 44 B.C., when he was assassinated by a number of his intimate friends, notably Marcus and Decimus Brutus and C. Cassius, March 15th.

Caesar's Writings.

§ 4. Besides being a general and a statesman, Caesar was an accomplished man of letters. He wrote works on grammatical subjects and a book on astronomy, in addition to the *Commentarii de Bello Gallico* and *de Bello Civili* which survive. The *Gallic War* was written probably about 50 B.C., and was not composed from day to day. It consists of eight books, of which the last was added by another writer, probably Aulus Hirtius, a friend and partisan of Caesar. The other seven books are the best example which we possess of the Latin language used absolutely without ornamentation as a means to chronicle and describe events. They are like the man's character—straightforward, unhesitating, frank, and rarely guilty of a mistake.

Caesar in Gaul.

§ 5. The peace of Gallia Narbonensis was threatened in 58 B.C. by the Helvetii, who had determined as early as 61 B.C. to quit their settlements in Switzerland, where the Germans gave them no rest, and to seek more inviting and peaceful homes in western Gaul. They had spent the intervening years in collecting provisions; then, in the early months of 58 B.C., they burnt their towns and villages and assembled at Geneva, to the number of 400,000 souls. The Romans did not desire the passage of this horde through their lands,

neither did they wish the Helvetii to vacate their position on the frontier, which would be at once occupied by the Germans. The prevention of the migration was the immediate cause of Caesar's hastening to his province. The Helvetii demanded a passage through the lands of the Allobroges, but Caesar blocked the road by an immense series of earthworks, and they eventually made their way out by the passes of the Jura, more to the north. They had already crossed the Arar (*Saône*) before Caesar could bring up his forces to meet them. A fortnight later they were completely defeated at Bibracte (*Autun*), and the survivors were compelled to return to Helvetia. Caesar hastened on to the Rhine Valley and there gave battle to Ariovistus and the Germans, whom he annihilated. In the following year, 57 B.C., he advanced northward into Belgica. The Remi alone sided with him; all the rest of the Belgae united to resist the invader, and among them the German Nervii and Aduatŭci. On the Sabis (*Sambre*) Caesar turned an imminent defeat into a complete triumph. The army of the Nervii was all but extirpated; the Bellovăci, Atrebătes, Suessiōnes, Ambiāni, and others submitted. A coalition of the coast tribes of Armorĭcum (*Brittany*), headed by the Veneti and extending as far as the Menapii, was crushed in a naval battle in 56 B.C.; and by the close of this third campaign the whole of Gaul, including Aquitania, had been reduced.

The Germans of the Lower Rhine were still aggressive, and in the winter of 56-55, 430,000 Usipetes and Tencteri crossed into Gaul. Caesar entered into negotiations with them, but, suspecting them of treachery, suddenly attacked and massacred the entire host. The few who escaped he pursued across the Rhine by means of a bridge which he built near Coblenz, but he effected little on the further bank. The remainder of the year 55 B.C., and part of 54 B.C., were occupied with the two invasions of Britain (§ 5). A few months later the Gauls, led by Ambiŏrix the Eburonian, all but captured the winter camp of Caesar's *legatus*, Q. Cicero. Sabinus, another *legatus*, with a legion and a half, was captured and massacred near Aduatŭca (*Tongern*). The Senones, Carnūtes, Nervii, and Trevĕri all revolted

unsuccessfully. Sooner or later the insurrection ran through all Belgic Gaul, always with the same result, but it was not till the close of 53 B.C. that peace was thoroughly restored. In 52 B.C. the Arverni rose under Vercingĕtŏrix. All Celtica followed suit, including at last even the Aedui. Vercingĕtŏrix stood siege in Avarĭcum (*Bourges*) and was defeated, withdrawing to Gergŏvia (near *Clermont*). Here Caesar was repulsed, and thereupon the Belgae joined the revolt. The Gauls now occupied Alĕsia (*Alise Sainte Reine, Côte d'Or*), and there Caesar blockaded them while other rebels encircled his own lines. The whole force of Gaul was there baffled. Alesia fell (52 B.C.); Vercingetorix surrendered. The Biturīges and Bellovăci held out a little longer, but with Uxellodūnum (near *Cahors*) fell the last of the patriots, 51 B.C.

§ 6. Long before Caesar's time the Romans had known of the existence of Britain as an island rich in tin, and said to be rich, too, in gold and pearls. There were also various "travellers'* tales" about it; but even Caesar, though he made enquiries amongst traders who regularly visited it, could get no definite information about "the size of the island, the nature or size of the tribes inhabiting it, their knowledge of war, their customs, or which were their commodious havens" (iv. 20).

Britain in Caesar's time.

The earliest population of whom much is known were Iberians, a race of mere savages once scattered over all western Europe. Next came Celts (*Gaels* or *Goidels*) of the same stock as those of Gallia Celtica, who quickly drove back the Iberians to the remoter parts of the island, where —in Devon and Cornwall, Wales, and the Scottish Highlands—traces of them still remain. Thirdly, various tribes from Gallia Belgica crossed over and supplanted the Gaels. These last comers were *Brythons*, whose name survives in

* Britain is first mentioned by the Greek Aristotle (died 323 B.C.), who knew it to be an island. Polybius, the Greek historian of Rome, described it (*circa* 150 B.C.). It is mentioned at some length by the historian Diodorus and the geographer Strabo (contemporaries of the emperor Augustus, *circa* 20 B.C.), and by Plutarch, who wrote a *Life* of Caesar (80 A.D.). But the Greek traveller Pytheas of Marseilles had actually explored much of the island about 330 B.C.; and a late Latin poet, Festus Avienus (370 A.D.), translated the narrative of a Carthaginian explorer who got as far as Ireland at some very early date.

the words Briton and Britannia. They first seized the southern and south-eastern districts (the country south of the Thames, which Caesar speaks of as the *Civitates Maritimae*), whence they gradually spread as far as Northumbria and the borders of Wales. This explains why the names of British and Gaulish tribes and towns are often the same: there were Parisii in south Yorkshire and on the Seine, Cenomani about the Wash and in Cisalpine Gaul, Atrebates in Berkshire and about Arras in France. In particular what is now Hampshire was in Caesar's time Belgic Britain, and its capital Winchester was afterwards known as Venta Belgarum.

The south-eastern portions of Britain were therefore in point of blood, speech, and customs, very similar to Belgic Gaul. It is to this part of the island alone that Caesar's *personal* observations apply. He tells us (v. 12—14) that the population was large, rich in cattle, building dwellings and strongholds (*oppida*) very much like those of the Gauls; that they used bars of iron as currency, but possessed also a gold coinage.

The existence of a currency proves the existence of trade. The British have always been traders. Their gold coins were rude imitations of Greek money, dating as far back as 350 B.C. London was probably already a mart for trade with the Rhenish shores opposite. There is no doubt that British tin was very early an article of export, though it is a matter of dispute whether the "Tin Islands," to which the ancient writers say the Phoenicians came to trade in immemorial times, were in Britain (St. Michael's Mount, the Scilly Isles, or the Isle of Thanet) or in Spain (islands of the Bay of Vigo). British pearls from the Conway River ceased to be valuable only when oriental pearls became more accessible. When Britain at last became a Roman province, it exported silver, tin, copper, lead and iron, oysters, sporting dogs, slaves, and corn. Trade implies trade-routes. The Icenild Way, from Norfolk to Wiltshire, was a thoroughfare before Caesar came, and so probably was also the Watling Street, from Dover to Chester.

Caesar tells us that the land was densely forested, and

the climate milder than that of Gaul; that the most civilised tribes were those of Cantium (Kent), an agricultural people very like the Gauls of the mainland; that further inland agriculture disappeared, civilisation grew slighter, and the natives lived by the chase and on the milk of their herds. He says that tattooing was universal—the name *Brythons* is said to mean "painted" or "tattooed"—one object of this practice being to intimidate the foe. Finally (in iv. 33) he describes with admiration the skill and bravery with which the Britons employed chariots in war.

There was no political unity, but from time to time one or other tribe gained a short-lived ascendency. Thus in 54 B.C. Cassivellaunus was over-lord of all Eastern Britain between the Thames and the Wash. His tribe was probably the Cassi * of Hertfordshire, and his power extended over Middlesex, Essex, Suffolk, Cambridgeshire, parts of Bedfordshire, Buckinghamshire, and Berkshire, and possibly into Norfolk.

Caesar in Britain.

Caesar's first expedition (55 B.C.) was a failure. He landed, indeed, and stayed a month, but was unable to move even a day's march from the coast. He blames the weather, but the real reason was the inadequacy of his force of two legions, without cavalry, in face of the British resistance.

Caesar's avowed reasons for attacking Britain were the support given by the Britons to their kinsmen in Gaul, and the fact that the island was the headquarters of the Gallic national religion of Druidism. As Caesar crossed the Rhine to terrorise the Germans, so he crossed the Straits of Dover to show the Britons that they were not beyond his reach. It is possible that the mere love of adventure, or the reputation of the British gold and pearls, may have had some influence with him. He is said to have presented a corselet of pearls to a Roman temple; but Cicero, writing to a friend, lets out the fact that the reputed wealth of the island was a mistake: there were no precious metals to repay the invader, and no slaves worth having.

* Apparently known also by the names of Catuvellauni, or Cassivellauni, and Catyeuchlani. The name of their prince Cassivellaunus is the Welsh Caswallon, Cadwallon, or Cadwaladr.

In the second expedition (54 B.C.) Caesar forced his way as far as the site of St. Albans, and received the submission of Cassivellaunus (see § 8, A). But the tribute which was promised was never paid.

On each occasion Caesar sailed from Boulogne. In 55 B.C. he arrived off Dover, and landed at Lymne in Romney Marsh. In 54 B.C. the landing-place was at Deal, and the course of his marches thence was to the Stour at Ashford, to the Medway near Aylesford or Maidstone, and along the hills westward through Surrey by Westerham and Epsom Downs until the high ground falls to the Thames near Walton. Crossing the river there by a very ancient ford (Coway Stakes), Caesar marched due north by Uxbridge and Watford to St. Albans. His return was probably by the same route.

The Roman Army.

§ 7. (i) Under the early kings the Roman Army or *Legio* consisted of three thousand *milites* and three hundred *equites*, together with light-armed troops or *velites*.

(ii) As the population increased new arrangements became necessary, and Servius Tullius is said to have organised four legions from citizens who could afford to serve at their own expense (*Assidui* or *Locupletes*). They fought in a close array or phalanx of six files deep, and, when fully armed, wore a helmet (*cassis*, *galea*), breastplate (*lorīca*), round iron shield (*clipeus*), and greaves (*ocreae*), some in the rear ranks wearing, instead of the *clipeus*, the oblong leather shield (*scutum*). Besides these there were light-armed troops (*rorarii*), and twelve centuries of cavalry who now received a sum of money for their expenses.

(iii) The army system gradually developed till in the time of Polybius (150 B.C.) the whole legion of four thousand two hundred men was divided into three classes—known as *Hastati*, *Principes*, and *Triarii* or *Pilani*, according as they fought in the front line, in the second line, or in the reserve. Each of the first two classes was arranged in ten maniples of one hundred and twenty men each, the *Triarii* in ten maniples of sixty men each. Each maniple contained two centuries (*centuriae*), and each century was commanded by a

centurion (*centurio*). Besides these there were twelve hundred light-armed skirmishers (*velites*). The three hundred cavalry attached to each legion were divided into ten troops (*turmae*) of thirty men each, every *turma* being commanded by three *decuriones*. The allies furnished about an equal number of infantry, and three times the number of horse, for each legion of the Roman troops. These were the *socii* drawn from the Latin colonies and the free federal towns of Italy. Finally, the auxiliary troops (*auxilia*) were raised in the provinces, from non-Italian states.

(iv) C. Marius (106-102 B.C.) did away with all qualifications of property, and threw open the ranks to all who possessed civil status (*capite censi*). The *legio* was divided into ten *cohortes*, each of which combined three maniples—in all about six thousand men, and all were armed with the heavy javelin (*pilum*), and the short sword (*gladius*). The cavalry was entirely composed of foreign troops, and even in the army of Caesar only about three-quarters of the infantry were Romans.

The rank and standing of the officers and troops were now regulated by personal merit. The ten cohorts of the legion ascended progressively in efficiency and experience from the tenth and last to the first. Each maniple also contained a *centuria prior* and a *centuria posterior*, and the old grades of *princeps*, *hastatus*, *triarius* (or *pilanus*) were now used only as names of rank. So the first centurion of the legion would be the centurion of the *centuria prior* of the *pilani* of *Cohors I.* He was called *primi pili centurio*, or simply *primus pilus*. The most distinguished centurions were called *primi ordines*, and they formed with the general a council of war. The centurion's mark of office was a vine rod (*vitis*), used for chastising subordinates. Each legion had six military tribunes (*tribuni militum*) elected by the people. They were mostly young Romans of rank, who accompanied the *imperator* to learn the art of war. Besides these there were *praefecti sociorum* and *praefecti auxiliorum*, commanding respectively the allied troops and the auxiliaries.

On days of battle and during his absence Caesar appointed a *legatus*, as a superior officer, for each legion. The army was also accompanied by a *quaestor*.

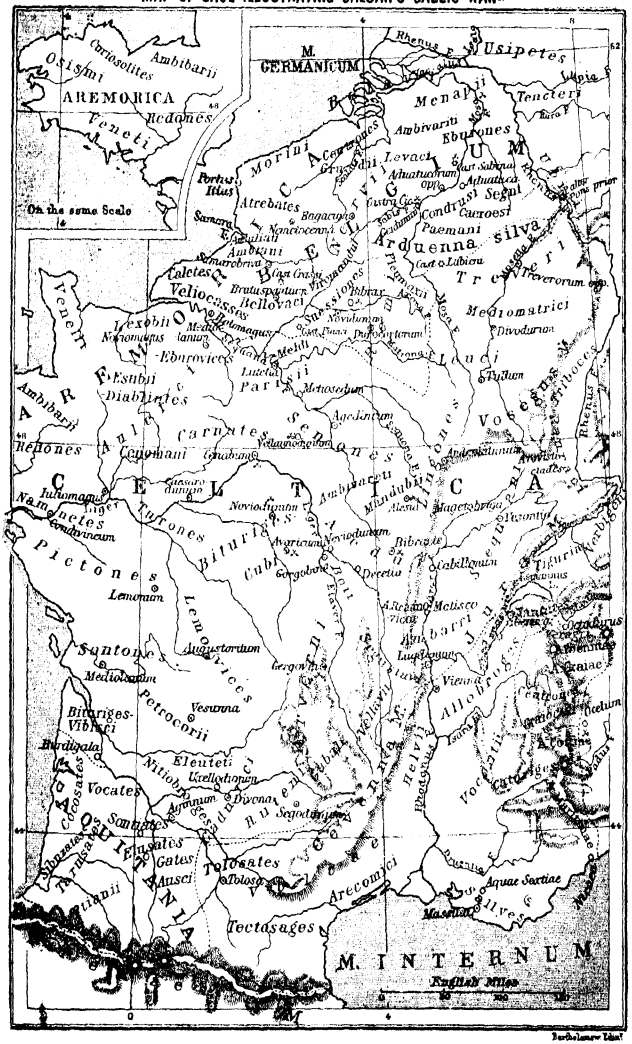
§ 8. Cap. 1—4. Caesar visits Cisalpine Gaul and Illyricum for the assizes, leaving instructions for building a fleet for service in Britain. Indutiomarus endeavours to raise the Treveri, but is prevented by the party of Cingetorix and the arrival of Caesar. Cap. 5—7. The departure of the expedition is delayed by the attempted escape of Dumnorix. His flight and death. Cap. 8—11. Second landing of Caesar in Britain. He forces the passage of the Stour, but is recalled by a disaster to his fleet. He fortifies a naval camp, returns, and captures a British *oppidum*. Cap. 12—14. A digression on the position and climate of Britain, and the manners of its inhabitants. Cap. 15—19. After a defeat of the British, Caesar fords the Thames. Cassivellaunus changes his tactics. Cap. 20—22. The Trinobantes submit, and are followed by other tribes. Capture of Cassivellaunus' stronghold. He incites the Kentish tribes to attack the naval camp, and soon after makes peace.

A. The Second Invasion of Britain.

Cap. 23—25. Caesar returns to Gaul and disposes his troops for the winter. The Carnutes assassinate the Romanising prince Tasgetius. Cap. 26—31. Ambiorix attacks the camp of Sabinus and Cotta. He offers the troops safe-conduct. After a quarrelsome scene in the council Sabinus persuades Cotta to accept it. Cap. 32—37. The Gauls attack the column by surprise. Sabinus is assassinated at a parley, Cotta is killed, and the remainder commit suicide. Cap. 38—44. The Nervii attack the camp of Cicero, who refuses to come to terms. The siege. Exploits of two centurions. Cap. 45—48. A messenger contrives to reach Caesar, who hurries to the rescue. Cap. 49—52. Victory of Caesar with two legions, and relief of Cicero. Cap. 53—54. General disaffection of the Gauls. Cap. 55—58. Indutiomarus heads the national movement, attacks Labienus' camp, is defeated and slain.

B. The Rising of the Belgae.

MAP OF GAUL ILLUSTRATING CAESAR'S GALLIC WAR.



Bartholomew Edin.

C. IULI CAESARIS
DE BELLO GALLICO
LIBER QUINTUS.

LUCIO Domitio, Ap. Claudio consulibus discedens ab hibernis Caesar in Italiam, ut quotannis facere consuerat, legatis imperat, quos legionibus praefecerat, uti, quam plurimas possent, hieme naves aedificandas veteresque reficiendas curarent. Earum modum formamque demonstrat. Ad celeritatem onerandi subductionesque paulo facit humiliores quam quibus in nostro mari uti consuevimus, atque id eo magis, quod propter crebras commutationes aestuum minus magnos ibi fluctus fieri cognoverat; ad onera ac multitudinem iumentorum transportandam paulo latiores, quam quibus in reliquis utimur maribus. Has omnes actuarias imperat fieri, quam ad rem humilitas multum adiuvat. Ea, quae sunt usui ad armandas naves, ex Hispania apportari iubet. Ipse conventibus Galliae citerioris peractis in Illyricum proficiscitur, quod a Pirustis finitimam partem provinciae incursionibus vastari audiebat. Eo cum venisset, civitatibus milites imperat certumque in locum convenire iubet. Qua re nuntiata Pirustae legatos ad eum mittunt, qui doceant, nihil earum rerum publico factum consilio, seseque paratos esse demonstrant omnibus rationibus de iniuriis satisfacere. Percepta oratione eorum

Caesar obsides imperat eosque ad certam diem adduci iubet; nisi ita fecerint, sese bello civitatem persecuturum demon-
9 strat. Iis ad diem adductis, ut imperaverat, arbitros inter civitates dat, qui litem aestiment poenamque constituant.

II. His confectis rebus conventibusque peractis in citeriorem Galliam revertitur atque inde ad exercitum pro-
2 ficiscitur. Eo cum venisset, circuitis omnibus hibernis singulari militum studio in summa omnium rerum inopia circiter sescentas eius generis, cuius supra demonstravimus, naves et longas XXVIII invenit instructas, neque multum
3 abesse ab eo, quin paucis diebus deduci possint. Collaudatis militibus atque iis, qui negotio praefuerant, quid fieri velit ostendit atque omnes ad portum Itium convenire iubet, quo ex portu commodissimum in Britanniam traiectum esse cognoverat, circiter milium passuum XXX transmissum a continenti:
4 huic rei quod satis esse visum est militum, reliquit. Ipse cum legionibus expeditis IV et equitibus DCCC in fines Trevororum proficiscitur, quod hi neque ad concilia veniebant neque imperio parebant Germanosque Transrhenanos sollicitare dicebantur.

III. Haec civitas longe plurimum totius Galliae equitatu valet magnasque habet copias peditum, Rhenumque, ut
2 supra demonstravimus, tangit. In ea civitate duo de princi-
3 patu inter se contendebant, Indutiomarus et Cingetorix; e quibus alter, simul atque de Caesaris legionumque adventu cognitum est, ad eum venit, se suosque omnes in officio futuros neque ab amicitia populi Romani defecturos con-
4 firmavit, quaeque in Treveris gererentur, ostendit. At Indutiomarus equitatum peditatumque cogere iisque, qui per aetatem in armis esse non poterant, in silvam Arduennam abditis, quae ingenti magnitudine per medios fines Trevererorum a flumine Rheno ad initium Remorum pertinet,
5 bellum parare instituit. Sed posteaquam non nulli prin-

cipes ex ea civitate, et familiaritate Cingetorigis adducti et adventu nostri exercitus perterriti, ad Caesarem venerunt et de suis privatim rebus ab eo petere coeperunt, quoniam civitati consulere non possent, veritus, ne ab omnibus desereretur, legatos ad Caesarem mittit: Seso idcirco ab 6 suis discedere atque ad eum venire noluisse, quo facilius civitatem in officio contineret, ne omnis nobilitatis discessu plebs propter imprudentiam laberetur: itaque esse civitatem in sua potestate, seseque, si Caesar permitteret, ad eum in castra venturum, suas civitatisque fortunas eius fidei permissurum.

IV. Caesar, etsi intellegebat, qua de causa ea dicerentur 1 quaeque eum res ab instituto consilio deterreret, tamen, ne aestatem in Treveris consumere cogeretur omnibus ad Britannicum bellum rebus comparatis, Indutiomarum ad se cum ducentis obsidibus venire iussit. His adductis, in iis 2 filio propinquisque eius omnibus, quos nominatim evocaverat, consolatus Indutiomarum hortatusque est, uti in officio maneret; nihilo tamen setius principibus Trevererorum 3 ad se convocatis hos singillatim Cingetorigi conciliavit, quod cum merito eius a se fieri intellegebat, tum magni interesse arbitrabatur eius auctoritatem inter suos quam plurimum valere, cuius tam egregiam in se voluntatem perspexisset. Id tulit factum graviter Indutiomarus, suam gratiam inter 4 suos minui, et, qui iam ante inimico in nos animo fuisset, multo gravius hoc dolore exarsit.

V. His rebus constitutis Caesar ad portum Itium cum 1 legionibus pervenit. Ibi cognoscit, LX naves, quae in 2 Meldis factae erant, tempestate reiectas cursum tenere non potuisse atque eodem, unde erant profectae, revertisse; reliquas paratas ad navigandum atque omnibus rebus instructas invenit. Eodem equitatus totius Galliae con- 3 venit numero milium quattuor principesque ex omnibus

4 civitatibus; ex quibus perpaucos, quorum in se fidem perspexerat, relinquere in Gallia, reliquos obsidum loco secum ducere decreverat, quod, cum ipse abesset, motum Galliae verebatur.

VI. Erat una cum ceteris Dumnorix Aeduus, de quo ante ab nobis dictum est. Hunc secum habere in primis constituerat, quod eum cupidum rerum novarum, cupidum imperii, magni animi, magnae inter Gallos auctoritatis
2 cognoverat. Accedebat huc, quod in concilio Aeduorum Dumnorix dixerat, sibi a Caesare regnum civitatis deferri; quod dictum Aedui graviter ferebant, neque recusandi aut
3 deprecandi causa legatos ad Caesarem mittere audebant. Id factum ex suis hospitibus Caesar cognoverat. Ille omnibus primo precibus petere contendit, ut in Gallia relinqueretur, partim quod insuetus navigandi mare timeret, partim quod
4 religionibus impediri sese diceret. Postĕaquam id obstinate sibi negari vidit, omni spe impetrandi adempta, principes Galliae sollicitare, sevocare singulos hortarique coepit, uti
5 in continenti remanerent; metu territare: non sine causa fieri, ut Gallia omni nobilitate spoliaretur; id esse consilium Caesaris, ut, quos in conspectu Galliae interficere vereretur,
6 hos omnes in Britanniam traductos necaret; fidem reliquis interponere, ius iurandum poscere, ut, quod esse ex usu Galliae intellexissent, communi consilio administrarent.
7 Haec a compluribus ad Caesarem deferebantur.

VII. Qua re cognita Caesar, quod tantum civitati Aeduae dignitatis tribuebat, coërcendum atque deterrendum, quibus-
2 cumque rebus posset, Dumnorigem statuebat; quod longius eius amentiam progredi videbat, prospiciendum, ne quid
3 sibi ac rei publicae nocere posset. Itaque dies circiter XXV in eo loco commoratus, quod Corus ventus navigationem impediebat, qui magnam partem omnis temporis in his locis flare consuevit, dabat operam, ut in officio Dumnorigem con-

tinerot, nihilo tamen setius omnia eius consilia cognosceret; tandem idoneam nactus tempestatem milites equitesque 4
conscendere in naves iubet. At omnium impeditis animis 5
Dumnorix cum equitibus Aeduorum a castris insciente
Caesare domum discedere coepit. Qua re nuntiata, Caesar 6
intermissa profectione atque omnibus rebus postpositis
magnam partem equitatus ad eum insequendum mittit
retrahique imperat; si vim faciat neque pareat, interfici 7
iubet, nihil hunc se absente pro sano facturum arbitratus,
qui praesentis imperium neglexisset. Ille enim revocatus 8
resistere ac se manu defendere suorumque fidem implorare
coepit, saepe clamitans, liberum se liberaeque esse civitatis.
Illi, ut erat imperatum, circumsistunt hominem atque 9
interficiunt; at equites Aedui ad Caesarem omnes revertuntur.

VIII. His rebus gestis, Labieno in continente cum tribus 1
legionibus et equitum milibus duobus relicto, ut portus
tueretur et rem frumentariam provideret, quaeque in Gallia
gererentur, cognosceret consiliumque pro tempore et pro re
caperet, ipse cum quinque legionibus et pari numero equitum, 2
quem in continenti reliquerat, ad solis occasum naves solvit
et leni Africo provectus, media circiter nocte vento intermisso, cursum non tenuit et longius delatus aestu orta luce
sub sinistra Britanniam relictam conspexit. Tum rursus 3
aestus commutationem secutus remis contendit, ut eam
partem insulae caperet, qua optimum esse egressum superiore
aestate cognoverat. Qua in re admodum fuit militum virtus 4
laudanda, qui vectoriis gravibusque navigiis non intermisso
remigandi labore longarum navium cursum adaequarunt.
Accessum est ad Britanniam omnibus navibus meridiano 5
fere tempore, neque in eo loco hostis est visus; sed, ut 6
postea Caesar ex captivis cognovit, cum magnae manus eo
convenissent, multitudine navium perterritae, quae cum
annotinis privatisque, quas sui quisque commodi fecerat,

amplius octingentae uno erant visae tempore, a litore discesserant ac se in superiora loca abdiderant.

IX. Caesar exposito exercitu et loco castris idoneo capto, ubi ex captivis cognovit, quo in loco hostium copiae consedissent, cohortibus decem ad mare relictis et equitibus trecentis, qui praesidio navibus essent, de tertia vigilia ad hostes contendit, eo minus veritus navibus, quod in litore molli atque aperto deligatas ad ancoram relinquebat, et praesidio navibus Quintum Atrium praefecit. Ipse noctu
2 progressus milia passuum circiter XII hostium copias conspicatus est. Illi equitatu atque essedis ad flumen progressi
3 ex loco superiore nostros prohibere et proelium committere coeperunt. Repulsi ab equitatu se in silvas abdiderunt,
4 locum nancti egregie et natura et opere munitum, quem domestici belli, ut videbatur, causa iam ante praeparaverant: nam crebris arboribus succisis omnes introitus erant praeclusi. Ipsi ex silvis rari propugnabant nostrosque intra
5 munitiones ingredi prohibebant. At milites legionis sep-
6 timae testudine facta et aggere ad munitiones adiecto locum ceperunt eosque ex silvis expulerunt paucis vulneribus acceptis. Sed eos fugientes longius Caesar prosequi vetuit,
7 et quod loci naturam ignorabat, et quod magna parte diei consumpta munitioni castrorum tempus relinqui volebat.

X. Postridie eius diei mane tripertito milites equitesque in expeditionem misit, ut eos, qui fugerant, persequerentur. His aliquantum itineris progressis, cum iam extremi essent
2 in prospectu, equites a Quinto Atrio ad Caesarem venerunt, qui nuntiarent, superiore nocte maxima coorta tempestate prope omnes naves afflictas atque in litore eiectas esse, quod neque ancorae funesque subsisterent neque nautae gubernatoresque vim tempestatis pati possent: itaque ex eo con-
3 cursu navium magnum esse incommodum acceptum.

XI. His rebus cognitis Caesar legiones equitatumque revocari atque in itinere resistere iubet, ipse ad naves revertitur; eadem fere, quae ex nuntiis litterisque cognoverat, coram perspicit, sic ut amissis circiter XL navibus reliquae tamen refici posse magno negotio viderentur. Itaque ex legionibus fabros deligit et ex continenti alios arcessi iubet; Labieno scribit, ut, quam plurimas posset, iis legionibus, quae sunt apud eum, naves instituat. Ipse, etsi res erat multae operae ac laboris, tamen commodissimum esse statuit omnes naves subduci et cum castris una munitione coniungi. In his rebus circiter dies X consumit, ne nocturnis quidem temporibus ad laborem militum intermissis. Subductis navibus castrisque egregie munitis easdem copias, quas ante, praesidio navibus reliquit, ipse eodem, unde redierat, proficiscitur. Eo cum venisset, maiores iam undique in eum locum copiae Britannorum convenerant summa imperii bellique administrandi communi consilio permissa Cassivellauno; cuius fines a maritimis civitatibus flumen dividit, quod appellatur Tamesis, a mari circiter milia passuum LXXX. Huic superiore tempore cum reliquis civitatibus continentia bella intercesserant; sed nostro adventu permoti Britanni hunc toti bello imperioque praefecerant.

XII. Britanniae pars interior ab iis incolitur, quos natos in insula ipsi memoria proditum dicunt, maritima pars ab iis, qui praedae ac belli inferendi causa ex Belgio transierunt (qui omnes fere iis nominibus civitatum appellantur, quibus orti ex civitatibus eo pervenerunt) et bello illato ibi permanserunt atque agros colere coeperunt. Hominum est infinita multitudo creberrimaque aedificia fere Gallicis consimilia, pecorum magnus numerus. Utuntur aut nummo aureo aut taleis ferreis ad certum pondus examinatis pro nummo. Nascitur ibi plumbum album in mediterraneis regionibus, in maritimis ferrum, sed eius exigua est copia; aere utuntur importato. Materia cuiusque generis, ut in

6 Gallia, est praeter fagum atque abietem. Leporem et gallinam et anserem gustare fas non putant; haec tamen
7 alunt animi voluptatisque causa. Loca sunt temperatiora quam in Gallia, remissioribus frigoribus.

XIII. Insula natura triquetra, cuius unum latus est contra Galliam. Huius lateris alter angulus, qui est ad Cantium, quo fere omnes ex Gallia naves appelluntur, ad orientem solem, inferior ad meridiem spectat. Hoc pertinet
2 circiter milia passuum quingenta. Alterum vergit ad Hispaniam atque occidentem solem; qua ex parte est Hibernia, dimidio minor, ut existimatur, quam Britannia, sed pari
3 spatio transmissus, atque ex Gallia est in Britanniam. In hoc medio cursu est insula, quae appellatur Mona; complures praeterea minores subiectae insulae existimantur; de quibus insulis non nulli scripserunt, dies continuos xxx
4 sub bruma esse noctem. Nos nihil de eo percontationibus reperiebamus, nisi certis ex aqua mensuris breviores esse
5 quam in continenti noctes videbamus. Huius est longitudo lateris, ut fert illorum opinio, septingentorum milium.
6 Tertium est contra septentriones; cui parti nulla est obiecta terra, sed eius angulus lateris maxime ad Germaniam spectat. Hoc milia passuum octingenta in longitudinem esse
7 existimatur. Ita omnis insula est in circuitu viciens centenum milium passuum.

XIV. Ex his omnibus longe sunt humanissimi, qui Cantium incolunt, quae regio est maritima omnis, neque
2 multum a Gallica differunt consuetudine. Interiores plerique frumenta non serunt, sed lacte et carne vivunt pellibusque sunt vestiti. Omnes vero se Britanni vitro inficiunt, quod caeruleum efficit colorem, atque hoc horridiores sunt
3 in pugna aspectu; capilloque sunt promisso atque omni parte corporis rasa praeter caput et labrum superius.
4 Uxores habent deni duodenique inter se communes, et

maxime fratres cum fratribus parentesque cum liberis; sed, 5
qui sunt ex iis nati, eorum habentur liberi, quo primum
virgo quaeque deducta est.

XV. Equites hostium essedariique acriter proelio cum 1
equitatu nostro in itinere conflixerunt, tamen ut nostri
omnibus partibus superiores fuerint atque eos in silvas
collesque compulerint; sed compluribus interfectis cupidius 2
insecuti non nullos ex suis amiserunt. At illi intermisso 3
spatio, imprudentibus nostris atque occupatis in munitione
castrorum, subito se ex silvis eiecerunt impetuque in eos
facto, qui erant in statione pro castris collocati, acriter
pugnaverunt, duabusque missis subsidio cohortibus a Caesare, 4
atque his primis legionum duarum, cum hae perexiguo
intermisso loci spatio inter se constitissent, novo genere
pugnae perterritis nostris per medios audacissime perru-
perunt seque inde incolumes receperunt. Eo die Quintus 5
Laberius Durus tribunus militum interficitur. Illi pluribus
submissis cohortibus repelluntur.

XVI. Toto hoc in genere pugnae, cum sub oculis 1
omnium ac pro castris dimicaretur, intellectum est, nostros
propter gravitatem armorum, quod neque insequi cedentes
possent neque ab signis discedere auderent, minus aptos
esse ad huius generis hostem, equites autem magno cum 2
periculo proelio dimicare, propterea quod illi etiam consulto
plerumque cederent et, cum paulum ab legionibus nostros
removissent, ex essedis desilirent et pedibus dispari proelio
contenderent. Equestris autem proelii ratio et cedentibus 3
et insequentibus par atque idem periculum inferebat. Ac- 4
cedebat huc, ut numquam conferti, sed rari magnisque
intervallis proeliarentur stationesque dispositas haberent,
atque alios alii deinceps excíperent integrique et recentes
defetigatis succederent.

XVII. Postero die procul a castris hostes in collibus constiterunt rarique se ostendere et lenius quam pridie
2 nostros equites proelio lacessere coeperunt. Sed meridie, cum Caesar pabulandi causa tres legiones atque omnem equitatum cum Gaio Trebonio legato misisset, repente ex omnibus partibus ad pabulatores advolaverunt, sic uti ab
3 signis legionibusque non absisterent. Nostri acriter in eos impetu facto reppulerunt neque finem sequendi fecerunt, quoad subsidio confisi equites, cum post se legiones viderent,
4 praecipites hostes egerunt, magnoque eorum numero interfecto neque sui colligendi neque consistendi aut ex essedis
5 desiliendi facultatem dederunt. Ex hac fuga protinus, quae undique convenerant, auxilia discesserunt, neque post id tempus umquam summis nobiscum copiis hostes contenderunt.

XVIII. Caesar cognito consilio eorum ad flumen Tamesim in fines Cassivellauni exercitum duxit; quod flumen uno
2 omnino loco pedibus, atque hoc aegre, transiri potest. Eo cum venisset, animum advertit, ad alteram fluminis ripam
3 magnas esse copias hostium instructas. Ripa autem erat acutis sudibus praefixis munita, eiusdemque generis sub
4 aqua defixae sudes flumine tegebantur. His rebus cognitis a captivis perfugisque Caesar praemisso equitatu confestim
5 legiones subsequi iussit. Sed ea celeritate atque eo impetu milites ierunt, cum capite solo ex aqua exstarent, ut hostes impetum legionum atque equitum sustinere non possent ripasque dimitterent ac se fugae mandarent.

XIX. Cassivellaunus, ut supra demonstravimus, omni deposita spe contentionis, dimissis amplioribus copiis, milibus circiter quattuor essedariorum relictis, itinera nostra servabat paulumque ex via excedebat locisque impeditis ac silvestribus sese occultabat atque iis regionibus, quibus nos iter facturos cognoverat, pecora atque homines ex agris in

silvas compellebat et, cum equitatus nostor liberius prae- 2
dandi vastandique causa se in agros eiecerat, omnibus viis
semitisque essedarios ex silvis emittebat et magno cum
periculo nostrorum equitum cum iis confligebat atque hoc
metu latius vagari prohibebat. Relinquebatur, ut neque 3
longius ab agmine legionum discedi Caesar pateretur, et
tantum in agris vastandis incendiisque faciendis hostibus
noceretur, quantum labore atque itinere legionarii milites
efficere poterant.

XX. Interim Trinobantes, prope firmissima earum 1
regionum civitas, ex qua Mandubracius adulescens Caesaris
fidem secutus ad eum in continentem Galliam venerat, cuius
pater in ea civitate regnum obtinuerat interfectusque erat
a Cassivellauno, ipse fuga mortem vitaverat, legatos ad
Caesarem mittunt pollicenturque, sese ei dedituros atque
imperata facturos; petunt, ut Mandubracium ab iniuria 2
Cassivellauni defendat atque in civitatem mittat, qui praesit
imperiumque obtineat. His Caesar imperat obsides quad- 3
raginta frumentumque exercitui Mandubraciumque ad eos
mittit. Illi imperata celeriter fecerunt, obsides ad numerum 4
frumentumque miserunt.

XXI. Trinobantibus defensis atque ab omni militum 1
iniuria prohibitis, Cenimagni, Segontiaci, Ancalites, Bibroci,
Cassi legationibus missis sese Caesari dedunt. Ab iis cog- 2
noscit, non longe ex eo loco oppidum Cassivellauni abesse
silvis paludibusque munitum, quo satis magnus hominum
pecorisque numerus convenerit. Oppidum autem Br[illegible]
vocant, cum silvas impeditas vallo atque fossa mu[illegible]
quo incursionis hostium vitandae causa conveni[illegible]
suerunt. Eo proficiscitur cum legionibus: locum re[illegible]
egregie natura atque opere munitum; tamen hunc duabus
ex partibus oppugnare contendit. Hostes paulisper morati 5
militum nostrorum impetum non tulerunt seseque alia ex

6 parte oppidi eiecerunt. Magnus ibi numerus pecoris repertus, multique in fuga sunt comprehensi atque interfecti.

XXII. Dum haec in his locis geruntur, Cassivellaunus ad Cantium, quod esse ad mare supra demonstravimus, quibus regionibus quattuor reges praeerant, Cingetorix, Carvilius, Taximagulus, Segovax, nuntios mittit atque iis imperat, uti coactis omnibus copiis castra navalia de im-
2 proviso adoriantur atque oppugnent. Ii cum ad castra venissent, nostri eruptione facta multis eorum interfectis, capto etiam nobili duce Lugotorige suos incolumes redux-
3 erunt. Cassivellaunus hoc proelio nuntiato, tot detrimentis acceptis, vastatis finibus, maxime etiam permotus defectione civitatum, legatos per Atrebatem Commium de deditione
4 ad Caesarem mittit. Caesar, cum constituisset hiemare in continenti propter repentinos Galliae motus, neque multum aestatis superesset, atque id facile extrahi posse intellegeret, obsides imperat et, quid in annos singulos vectigalis populo
5 Romano Britannia penderet, constituit; interdicit atque imperat Cassivellauno, ne Mandubracio neu Trinobantibus noceat.

XXIII. Obsidibus acceptis exercitum reducit ad mare,
2 naves invenit refectas. Iis deductis, quod et captivorum magnum numerum habebat et non nullae tempestate deperierant naves, duobus commeatibus exercitum reportare
3 instituit. Ac sic accidit, uti ex tanto navium numero tot navigationibus neque hoc neque superiore anno ulla omnino
4 navis, quae milites portaret, desideraretur, et ex iis, quae inanes ex continenti ad eum remitterentur, et prioris commeatus expositis militibus et quas postea Labienus faciendas curaverat numero LX, perpaucae locum caperent,
5 reliquae fere omnes reicerentur. Quas cum aliquamdiu Caesar frustra exspectasset, ne anni tempore a navigatione excluderetur, quod aequinoctium suberat, necessario an

gustius milites collocavit ac, summa tranquillitate consecuta, 6
secunda inita cum solvisset vigilia, prima luce terram
attigit omnesque incolumes naves perduxit.

XXIV. Subductis navibus concilioque Gallorum Samaro- 1
brivae peracto, quod eo anno frumentum in Gallia propter
siccitates angustius provenerat, coactus est aliter ac superior-
ibus annis exercitum in hibernis collocare legionesque in
plures civitates distribuere. Ex quibus unam in Morinos 2
ducendam Gaio Fabio legato dedit, alteram in Nervios
Quinto Ciceroni, tertiam in Esubios Lucio Roscio; quartam
in Remis cum Tito Labieno in confinio Treverorum hiemare
iussit; tres in Belgis collocavit; his Marcum Crassum quae- 3
storem et Lucium Munatium Plancum et Gaium Trebonium
legatos praefecit. Unam legionem, quam proxime trans 4
Padum conscripserat, et cohortes v in Eburones, quorum
pars maxima est inter Mosam ac Rhenum, qui sub imperio
Ambiorigis et Catuvolci erant, misit. His militibus Quintum 5
Titurium Sabinum et Lucium Aurunculeium Cottam legatos
praeesse iussit. Ad hunc modum distributis legionibus 6
facillime inopiae frumentariae sese mederi posse existimavit.
Atque harum tamen omnium legionum hiberna praeter eam, 7
quam Lucio Roscio in pacatissimam et quietissimam partem
ducendam dederat, milibus passuum centum continebantur.
Ipse interea, quoad legiones collocatas munitaque hiberna 8
cognovisset, in Gallia morari constituit.

XXV. Erat in Carnutibus summo loco natus Tasgetius, 1
cuius maiores in sua civitate regnum obtinuerant. Huic 2
Caesar pro eius virtute atque in se benevolentia, quod in
omnibus bellis singulari eius opera fuerat usus, maiorum
locum restituerat. Tertium iam hunc annum regnantem 3
inimici multis palam ex civitate auctoribus interfecerunt.
Defertur ea res ad Caesarem. Ille veritus, quod ad plures 4
pertinebat, ne civitas eorum impulsu deficeret, Lucium

Plancum cum legione ex Belgio celeriter in Carnutes proficisci iubet ibique hiemare, quorumque opera cognoverat Tasgetium interfectum, hos comprehensos ad se mittere.
5 Interim ab omnibus legatis quaestoribusque quibus legiones tradiderat, certior factus est, in hiberna perventum locumque hibernis esse munitum.

XXVI. Diebus circiter quindecim, quibus in hiberna ventum est, initium repentini tumultus ac defectionis ortum
2 est ab Ambiorige et Catuvolco; qui, cum ad fines regni sui Sabino Cottaeque praesto fuissent frumentumque in hiberna comportavissent, Indutiomari Treveri nuntiis impulsi suos concitaverunt subitoque oppressis lignatoribus magna manu
3 ad castra oppugnatum venerunt. Cum celeriter nostri arma cepissent vallumque ascendissent atque una ex parte Hispanis equitibus emissis equestri proelio superiores fuissent, desperata re hostes suos ab oppugnatione reduxerunt.
4 Tum suo more conclamaverunt, uti aliqui ex nostris ad colloquium prodiret: habere sese, quae de re communi dicere vellent, quibus rebus controversias minui posse sperarent.

XXVII. Mittitur ad eos colloquendi causa Gaius Arpineius eques Romanus, familiaris Quinti Titurii, et Quintus Iunius ex Hispania quidam, qui iam ante missu Caesaris ad Ambiorigem ventitare consuerat; apud quos Ambiorix ad
2 hunc modum locutus est: Sese pro Caesaris in se beneficiis plurimum ei confiteri debere, quod eius opera stipendio liberatus esset, quod Aduatucis, finitimis suis, pendere consuesset, quodque ei et filius et fratris filius ab Caesare remissi essent, quos Aduatuci obsidum numero missos apud
3 se in servitute et catenis tenuissent; neque id, quod fecerit de oppugnatione castrorum, aut iudicio aut voluntate sua fecisse, sed coactu civitatis, suaque esse eius modi imperia, ut non minus haberet iuris in se multitudo, quam ipse in multi-
4 tudinem. Civitati porro hanc fuisse belli causam, quod

repentinae Gallorum coniurationi resistere non potuerit. Id se facile ex humilitate sua probare posse, quod non adeo sit imperitus rerum, ut suis copiis populum Romanum superari posse confidat. Sed esse Galliae commune consilium: omnibus hibernis Caesaris oppugnandis hunc esse dictum diem, ne qua legio alterae legioni subsidio venire posset. Non facile Gallos Gallis negare potuisse, praesertim cum de recuperanda communi libertate consilium initum videretur. Quibus quoniam pro pietate satisfecerit, habere nunc se rationem officii pro beneficiis Caesaris: monere, orare Titurium pro hospitio, ut suae ac militum saluti consulat. Magnam manum Germanorum conductam Rhenum transisse; hanc adfore biduo. Ipsorum esse consilium, velintne prius, quam finitimi sentiant, eductos ex hibernis milites aut ad Ciceronem aut ad Labienum deducere, quorum alter milia passuum circiter quinquaginta, alter paulo amplius ab iis absit. Illud se pollicéri et iure iurando confirmare, tutum iter per fines daturum. Quod cum faciat, et civitati sese consulere, quod hibernis levetur, et Caesari pro eius meritis gratiam referre. Hac oratione habita discedit Ambiorix.

XXVIII. Arpineius et Iunius, quae audierunt, ad legatos deferunt. Illi repentina re perturbati, etsi ab hoste ea dicebantur, tamen non neglegenda existimabant, maximeque hac re permovebantur, quod civitatem ignobilem atque humilem Eburonum sua sponte populo Romano bellum facere ausam vix erat credendum. Itaque ad consilium rem deferunt, magnaque inter eos exsistit controversia. Lucius Aurunculeius compluresque tribuni militum et primorum ordinum centuriones nihil temere agendum neque ex hibernis iniussu Caesaris discedendum existimabant; quantasvis copias Germanorum sustineri posse munitis hibernis docebant: rem esse testimonio, quod primum hostium impetum multis ultro vulneribus illatis fortissime sustinuerint; re frumentaria non premi; interea et ex proximis

6 hibernis et a Caesare conventura subsidia; postremo quid esse levius aut turpius, quam auctore hoste de summis rebus capere consilium?

XXIX. Contra ea Titurius sero facturos clamitabat, cum maiores manus hostium adiunctis Germanis convenissent, aut cum aliquid calamitatis in proximis hibernis esset
2 acceptum. Brevem consulendi esse occasionem. Caesarem arbitrari profectum in Italiam; neque aliter Carnutes interficiundi Tasgetii consilium fuisse capturos, neque Eburones, si ille adesset, tanta contemptione nostri ad castra venturos
3 esse. Non hostem auctorem, sed rem spectare: subesse Rhenum; magno esse Germanis dolori Ariovisti mortem et
4 superiores nostras victorias; ardere Galliam tot contumeliis acceptis sub populi Romani imperium redactam, superiore
5 gloria rei militaris exstincta. Postremo quis hoc sibi persuaderet, sine certa re Ambiorigem ad eius modi consilium
6 descendisse? Suam sententiam in utramque partem esse tutam: si nihil esset durius, nullo periculo ad proximam legionem perventuros; si Gallia omnis cum Germanis con-
7 sentiret, unam esse in celeritate positam salutem. Cottae quidem atque eorum, qui dissentirent, consilium quem habere exitum? in quo si non praesens periculum, at certe longinqua obsidione fames esset timenda.

XXX. Hac in utramque partem disputatione habita, cum a Cotta primisque ordinibus acriter resisteretur, 'Vincite,' inquit, 'si ita vultis,' Sabinus, et id clariore voce, ut magna
2 pars militum exaudiret; 'neque is sum,' inquit, 'qui gravissime ex vobis mortis periculo terrear: hi sapient; si gravius
3 quid acciderit, abs te rationem reposcent; qui, si per te liceat, perendino die cum proximis hibernis coniuncti communem cum reliquis belli casum sustineant, non reiecti et relegati longe ab ceteris aut ferro aut fame intereant.'

XXXI. Consurgitur ex consilio: comprehendunt utrum- 1
que et orant, ne sua dissensione et pertinacia rem in
summum periculum deducant: facilem esse rem, seu manent, 2
seu proficiscantur, si modo unum omnes sentiant ac probent;
contra in dissensione nullam se salutem perspicere. Res 3
disputatione ad mediam noctem perducitur. Tandem dat
Cotta permotus manus: superat sententia Sabini. Pro 4
nuntiatur, prima luce ituros. Consumitur vigiliis reliqua
pars noctis, cum sua quisque miles circumspiceret, quid
secum portare posset, quid ex instrumento hibernorum
relinquere cogeretur. Omnia excogitantur, quare nec sine 5
periculo maneatur et languore militum et vigiliis periculum
augeatur. Prima luce sic ex castris proficiscuntur, ut 6
quibus esset persuasum, non ab hoste, sed ab homine
amicissimo Ambiorige consilium datum, longissimo agmine
maximisque impedimentis.

XXXII. At hostes, posteaquam ex nocturno fremitu 1
vigiliisque de profectione eorum senserunt, collocatis insidiis
bipertito in silvis opportuno atque occulto loco a milibus
passuum circiter duobus Romanorum adventum exspecta-
bant, et cum se maior pars agminis in magnam convallem 2
demisisset, ex utraque parte eius vallis subito se ostenderunt
novissimosque premere et primos prohibere ascensu atque
iniquissimo nostris loco proelium committere coeperunt.

XXXIII. Tum demum Titurius, qui nihil ante pro- 1
vidisset, trepidare et concursare cohortesque disponere, haec
tamen ipsa timide atque ut eum omnia deficere viderentur;
quod plerumque iis accidere consuevit, qui in ipso negotio
consilium capere coguntur. At Cotta, qui cogitasset, haec 2
posse in itinere accidere, atque ob eam causam profectionis
auctor non fuisset, nulla in re communi saluti decrat: et in
appellandis cohortandisque militibus imperatoris et in pugna

3 militis officia praestabat. Cum propter longitudinem agminis minus facile omnia per se obire et, quid quoque loco faciendum esset, providere possent, iusserunt pronuntiare, ut impedimenta relinquerent atque in orbem consisterent.
4 Quod consilium etsi in eius modi casu reprehendendum non
5 est, tamen incommodo accidit: nam et nostris militibus spem minuit et hostes ad pugnandum alacriores effecit, quod non sine summo timore et desperatione id factum videbatur.
6 Praeterea accidit, quod fieri necesse erat, ut vulgo milites ab signis discederent, quaeque quisque eorum carissima haberet, ab impedimentis petere atque arripere properaret, clamore et fletu omnia complerentur.

XXXIV. At barbaris consilium non defuit. Nam duces eorum tota acie pronuntiare iusserunt, ne quis ab loco discederet: illorum esse praedam atque illis reservari, quaecumque Romani reliquissent: proinde omnia in victoria
2 posita existimarent. Erant et virtute et studio pugnandi pares nostri: tametsi ab duce et a fortuna deserebantur, tamen omnem spem salutis in virtute ponebant, et quotiens quaeque cohors procurrerat, ab ea parte magnus numerus
3 hostium cadebat. Qua re animadversa Ambiorix pronuntiari iubet, ut procul tela coniciant neu propius accedant, et
4 quam in partem Romani impetum fecerint, cedant: levitate armorum et cotidiana exercitatione nihil iis noceri posse; rursus se ad signa recipientes insequantur.

XXXV. Quo praecepto ab iis diligentissime observato, cum quaepiam cohors ex orbe excesserat atque impetum
2 fecerat, hostes velocissime refugiebant. Interim eam partem
3 nudari necesse erat et ab latere aperto tela recipi. Rursus, cum in eum locum, unde erant egressi, reverti coeperant, et ab iis, qui cesserant, et ab iis, qui proximi steterant, cir
4 cumveniebantur; sin autem locum tenere vellent, nec virtuti locus relinquebatur, neque ab tanta multitudine coniecta

tela conferti vitare poterant. Tamen tot incommodis con- 5
flictati, multis vulneribus acceptis resistebant et magna
parte diei consumpta, cum a prima luce ad horam octavam
pugnaretur, nihil, quod ipsis esset indignum, committebant.
Tum Tito Balventio, qui superiore anno primum pilum 6
duxerat, viro forti et magnae auctoritatis, utrumque femur
tragula traicitur; Quintus Lucanius, eiusdem ordinis, for- 7
tissime pugnans, dum circumvento filio subvenit, interficitur;
Lucius Cotta legatus omnes cohortes ordinesque adhortans 8
in adversum os funda vulneratur.

XXXVI. His rebus permotus Quintus Titurius, cum 1
procul Ambiorigem suos cohortantem conspexisset, inter-
pretem suum Gnaeum Pompeium ad eum mittit rogatum,
ut sibi militibusque parcat. Ille appellatus respondit: Si 2
velit secum colloqui, licere; sperare, a multitudine impetrari
posse, quod ad militum salutem pertineat; ipsi vero nihil
nocitum iri, inque eam rem se suam fidem interponere.
Ille cum Cotta saucio communicat, si videatur, pugna ut 3
excedant et cum Ambiorige una colloquantur: sperare, ab
eo de sua ac militum salute impetrari posse. Cotta se ad
armatum hostem iturum negat atque in eo perseverat.

XXXVII. Sabinus, quos in praesentia tribunos mili- 1
tum circum se habebat, et primorum ordinum centuriones
se sequi iubet et, cum propius Ambiorigem accessisset,
iussus arma abicere imperatum facit suisque, ut idem
faciant, imperat. Interim, dum de condicionibus inter se 2
agunt longiorque consulto ab Ambiorige instituitur sermo,
paulatim circumventus interficitur. Tum vero suo more 3
victoriam conclamant atque ululatum tollunt impetuque in
nostros facto ordines perturbant. Ibi Lucius Cotta pugnans 4
interficitur cum maxima parte militum. Reliqui se in castra
recipiunt, unde erant egressi. Ex quibus Lucius Petrosidius 5
aquilifer, cum magna multitudine hostium premeretur,

aquilam intra vallum proiecit, ipse pro castris fortissime
6 pugnans occiditur. Illi aegre ad noctem oppugnationem
sustinent; noctu ad unum omnes desperata salute se ipsi
7 interficiunt. Pauci ex proelio elapsi incertis itineribus per
silvas ad Titum Labienum legatum in hiberna perveniunt
atque eum de rebus gestis certiorem faciunt.

XXXVIII. Hac victoria sublatus Ambiorix statim cum
equitatu in Aduatucos, qui erant eius regno finitimi, pro-
ficiscitur; neque noctem neque diem intermittit peditatum-
2 que sese subsequi iubet. Re demonstrata Aduatucisque
concitatis, postero die in Nervios pervenit hortaturque, ne
sui in perpetuum liberandi atque ulciscendi Romanos pro iis,
3 quas acceperint, iniuriis occasionem dimittant: interfectos
esse legatos duos magnamque partem exercitus interisse
4 demonstrat; nihil esse negotii, subito oppressam legionem,
quae cum Cicerone hiemet, interfici; se ad eam rem
profitetur adiutorem. Facile hac oratione Nerviis per-
suadet.

XXXIX. Itaque confestim dimissis nuntiis ad Ceutrones,
Grudios, Levacos, Pleumoxios, Geidumnos, qui omnes sub
eorum imperio sunt, quam maximas manus possunt, cogunt
et de improviso ad Ciceronis hiberna advolant, nondum ad
2 eum fama de Titurii morte perlata. Huic quoque accidit,
quod fuit necesse, ut non nulli milites, qui lignationis
munitionisque causa in silvas discessissent, repentino equitum
3 adventu interciperentur. His circumventis, magna manu
Eburones, Nervii, Aduatuci atque horum omnium socii et
clientes legionem oppugnare incipiunt. Nostri celeriter ad
4 arma concurrunt, vallum conscendunt. Aegre is dies
sustentatur, quod omnem spem hostes in celeritate ponebant
atque hanc adepti victoriam in perpetuum se fore victores
confidebant.

XL. Mittuntur ad Caesarem confestim ab Cicerone lit- 1
terae, magnis propositis praemiis, si pertulissent; obsessis
omnibus viis missi intercipiuntur. Noctu ex materia, quam 2
munitionis causa comportaverant, turres admodum cxx
excitantur incredibili celeritate; quae deesse operi vide-
bantur, perficiuntur. Hostes postero die multo maioribus 3
coactis copiis castra oppugnant, fossam complent. Eadem
ratione, qua pridie, ab nostris resistitur. Hoc idem reliquis 4
deinceps fit diebus. Nulla pars nocturni temporis ad laborem 5
intermittitur; non aegris, non vulneratis facultas quietis
datur. Quaecumque ad proximi diei oppugnationem opus 6
sunt, noctu comparantur; multae praeustae sudes, magnus
muralium pilorum numerus instituitur; turres contabu-
lantur, pinnae loricaeque ex cratibus attexuntur. Ipse 7
Cicero, cum tenuissima valitudine esset, ne nocturnum
quidem sibi tempus ad quietem relinquebat, ut ultro militum
concursu ac vocibus sibi parcere cogeretur.

XLI. Tunc duces principesque Nerviorum, qui aliquem 1
sermonis aditum causamque amicitiae cum Cicerone habe-
bant, colloqui sese velle dicunt. Facta potestate eadem, 2
quae Ambiorix cum Titurio egerat, commemorant: om-
nem esse in armis Galliam; Germanos Rhenum transisse; 3
Caesaris reliquorumque hiberna oppugnari. Addunt etiam
de Sabini morte; Ambiorigem ostentant fidei faciundae 4
causa. Errare eos dicunt, si quicquam ab his praesidii 5
sperent, qui suis rebus diffidant; sese tamen hoc esse in
Ciceronem populumque Romanum animo, ut nihil nisi
hiberna recusent atque hanc inveterascere consuetudinem
nolint; licere illis incolumibus per se ex hibernis discedere 6
et, quascumque in partes velint, sine metu proficisci. Cicero 7
ad haec unum modo respondit: non esse consuetudinem
populi Romani accipere ab hoste armato condicionem: si 8
ab armis discedere velint, se adiutore utantur legatosque

ad Caesarem mittant; sperare pro eius iustitia, quae petierint, impetraturos.

XLII. Ab hac spe repulsi Nervii vallo pedum IX et fossa
2 pedum XV hiberna cingunt. Haec et superiorum annorum consuetudine ab nobis cognoverant et, quos de exercitu
3 habebant captivos, ab his docebantur, sed nulla ferramentorum copia, quae esset ad hunc usum idonea, gladiis caespites circumcidere, manibus sagulisque terram exhaurire
4 nitebantur. Qua quidem ex re hominum multitudo cognosci potuit: nam minus horis tribus milium pedum XV in circuitu
5 munitionem perfecerunt, reliquisque diebus turres ad altitudinem valli, falces testudinesque, quas idem captivi docuerant, parare ac facere coeperunt.

XLIII. Septimo oppugnationis die maximo coorto vento ferventes fusili ex argilla glandes fundis et fervefacta iacula in casas, quae more Gallico stramentis erant tectae, iacere
2 coeperunt. Hae celeriter ignem comprehenderunt et venti
3 magnitudine in omnem locum castrorum distulerunt. Hostes maximo clamore, sicuti parta iam atque explorata victoria, turres testudinesque agere et scalis vallum ascendere coe-
4 perunt. At tanta militum virtus atque ea praesentia animi fuit, ut, cum undique flamma torrerentur maximaque telorum multitudine premerentur suaque omnia impedimenta atque omnes fortunas conflagrare intellegerent, non modo demigrandi causa de vallo decederet nemo, sed paene ne respiceret quidem quisquam, ac tum omnes acerrime for-
5 tissimeque pugnarent. Hic dies nostris longe gravissimus fuit; sed tamen hunc habuit eventum, ut eo die maximus numerus hostium vulneraretur atque interficeretur ut se sub ipso vallo constipaverant recessumque primis ultimi non
6 dabant. Paulum quidem intermissa flamma et quodam loco turri adacta et contingente vallum, tertiae cohortis

centuriones ex eo, quo stabant, loco recesserunt suosque omnes removerunt, nutu vocibusque hostes, si introire vellent, vocare coeperunt; quorum progredi ausus est nemo. Tum ex omni parte lapidibus coniectis deturbati, turrisque succensa est.

XLIV. Erant in ea legione fortissimi viri, centuriones, qui primis ordinibus appropinquarent, Titus Pulio et Lucius Vorenus. Ili perpetuas inter se controversias habebant, quinam anteferretur, omnibusque annis de locis summis simultatibus contendebant. Ex his Pulio, cum acerrime ad munitiones pugnaretur, 'Quid dubitas,' inquit, 'Vorene? aut quem locum tuae probandae virtutis exspectas? hic dies de nostris controversiis iudicabit.' Haec cum dixisset, procedit extra munitiones, quaeque pars hostium confertissima est visa, irrumpit. Ne Vorenus quidem sese vallo continet, sed omnium veritus existimationem subsequitur. Mediocri spatio relicto Pulio pilum in hostes immittit atque unum ex multitudine procurrentem traicit; quo percusso et exanimato, hunc scutis protegunt, in hostem tela universi coniciunt neque dant regrediendi facultatem. Transfigitur scutum Pulioni et verutum in balteo defigitur. Avertit hic casus vaginam et gladium educere conanti dextram moratur manum, impeditumque hostes circumsistunt. Succurrit inimicus illi Vorenus et laboranti subvenit. Ad hunc se confestim a Pulione omnis multitudo convertit; illum veruto arbitrantur occisum. Gladio comminus rem gerit Vorenus atque uno interfecto reliquos paulum propellit; dum cupidius instat, in locum deiectus inferiorem concidit. Huic rursus circumvento fert subsidium Pulio, atque ambo incolumes compluribus interfectis summa cum laude sese intra munitiones recipiunt. Sic fortuna in contentione et certamine utrumque versavit, ut alter alteri inimicus auxilio salutique esset, neque diiudicari posset, uter utri virtute anteferendus videretur.

XLV. Quanto erat in dies gravior atque asperior oppugnatio, et maxime quod magna parte militum confecta vulneribus res ad paucitatem defensorum pervenerat, tanto crebriores litterae nuntiique ad Caesarem mittebantur; quorum pars deprehensa in conspectu nostrorum militum
2 cum cruciatu necabatur. Erat unus intus Nervius nomine Vertico, loco natus honesto, qui a prima obsidione ad Ci-
3 ceronem perfugerat summamque ei fidem praestiterat. Hic servo spe libertatis magnisque persuadet praemiis, ut litte-
4 ras ad Caesarem deferat. Has ille in iaculo illigatas effert et Gallus inter Gallos sine ulla suspicione versatus ad Cae-
5 sarem pervenit. Ab eo de periculis Ciceronis legionisque cognoscitur.

XLVI. Caesar acceptis litteris hora circiter undecima diei statim nuntium in Bellovacos ad M. Crassum quaestorem mittit, cuius hiberna aberant ab eo milia passuum
2 XXV; iubet media nocte legionem proficisci celeriterque ad
3 se venire. Exit cum nuntio Crassus. Alterum ad Gaium Fabium legatum mittit, ut in Atrebatum fines legionem
4 adducat, qua sibi sit iter faciendum. Scribit Labieno, si rei publicae commodo facere posset, cum legione ad fines
5 Nerviorum veniat. Reliquam partem exercitus, quod paulo aberat longius, non putat exspectandam; equites circiter quadringentos ex proximis hibernis colligit.

XLVII. Hora circiter tertia ab antecursoribus de Crassi adventu certior factus eo die milia passuum XX procedit.
2 Crassum Samarobrivae praeficit legionemque attribuit, quod ibi impedimenta exercitus, obsides civitatum, litteras publicas frumentumque omne, quod eo tolerandae hiemis
3 causa devexerat, relinquebat. Fabius, ut imperatum erat, non ita multum moratus, in itinere cum legione occurrit.
4 Labienus, interitu Sabini et caede cohortium cognita, cum

omnes ad eum Trevirorum copiae venissent, veritus, ne, si ex hibernis fugae similem profectionem fecisset, hostium impetum sustinere non posset, praesertim quos recenti victoria efferri sciret, litteras Caesari remittit, quanto cum 5 periculo legionem ex hibernis educturus esset, rem gestam in Eburonibus perscribit, docet, omnes peditatus equitatusque copias Trevirorum tria milia passuum longe ab suis castris consedisse.

XLVIII. Caesar consilio eius probato, etsi opinione 1 trium legionum delectus ad duas redierat, tamen unum communis salutis auxilium in celeritate ponebat. Venit 2 magnis itineribus in Nerviorum fines. Ibi ex captivis cognoscit, quae apud Ciceronem gerantur quantoque in periculo res sit. Tum cuidam ex equitibus Gallis magnis 3 praemiis persuadet, uti ad Ciceronem epistulam deferat. Hanc Graecis conscriptam litteris mittit, ne intercepta 4 epistula nostra ab hostibus consilia cognoscantur. Si adire 5 non possit, monet, ut tragulam cum epistula ad amentum deligata intra munitionem castrorum abiciat. In litteris 6 scribit, se cum legionibus profectum celeriter affore; hortatur, ut pristinam virtutem retineat. Gallus periculum 7 veritus, ut erat praeceptum, tragulam mittit. Haec casu 8 ad turrim adhaesit neque ab nostris biduo animadversa tertio die a quodam milite conspicitur, dempta ad Ciceronem defertur. Ille perlectam in conventu militum recitat max- 9 imaque omnes laetitia afficit. Tum fumi incendiorum 10 procul videbantur, quae res omnem dubitationem adventus legionum expulit.

XLIX. Galli re cognita per exploratores obsidionem re- 1 linquunt, ad Caesarem omnibus copiis contendunt. Haec erant armata circiter milia LX. Cicero data facultate 2 Gallum ab eodem Verticone, quem supra demonstravimus, repetit, qui litteras ad Caesarem deferat; hunc admonet,

3 iter cauto diligenterque faciat; perscribit in litteris, hostes
ab se discessisse omnemque ad eum multitudinem convertisse.
4 Quibus litteris circiter media nocte Caesar allatis suos facit
5 certiores eosque ad dimicandum animo confirmat. Postero
die luce prima movet castra et, circiter milia passuum quat-
tuor progressus, trans vallem et rivum multitudinem hostium
6 conspicatur. Erat magni periculi res tantulis copiis iniquo
loco dimicare; tum, quoniam obsidione liberatum Ciceronem
sciebat, aequo animo remittendum de celeritate existimabat:
7 consedit et, quam aequissimo loco potest, castra communit;
atque haec, etsi erant exigua per se, vix hominum milium
septem, praesertim nullis cum impedimentis, tamen angustiis
viarum, quam maximo potest, contrahit, eo consilio, ut in
8 summam contemptionem hostibus veniat. Interim specula-
toribus in omnes partes dimissis explorat, quo commodissimo
itinere valles transiri possit.

L. Eo die parvulis equestribus proeliis ad aquam factis
2 utrique sese suo loco continent: Galli, quod ampliores copias,
3 quae nondum convenerant, exspectabant, Caesar, si forte
timoris simulatione hostes in suum locum elicere posset, ut
citra vallem pro castris proelio contenderet; si id efficere
non posset, ut exploratis itineribus minore cum periculo
4 vallem rivumque transiret. Prima luce hostium equitatus
ad castra accedit proeliumque cum nostris equitibus com-
5 mittit. Caesar consulto equites cedere seque in castra
recipere iubet; simul ex omnibus partibus castra altiore
vallo muniri portasque obstrui atque in his administrandis
rebus quam maxime concursari et cum simulatione agi
timoris iubet.

LI. Quibus omnibus rebus hostes invitati copias traducunt
aciemque iniquo loco constituunt, nostris vero etiam de vallo
2 deductis propius accedunt et tela intra munitionem ex omni-
bus partibus coniciunt praeconibusque circummissis pronun-

tiari iubent, seu quis Gallus seu Romanus velit ante horam tertiam ad se transire, sine periculo licere; post id tempus non fore potestatem; ac sic nostros contempserunt, ut, ob- 3
structis in speciem portis singulis ordinibus caespitum, quod ea non posse introrumpere videbantur, alii vallum manu scindere, alii fossas complere inciperent. Tum Caesar omni- 4
bus portis eruptione facta equitatuque emisso celeriter hostes in fugam dat, sic uti omnino pugnandi causa resisteret nemo, magnumque ex eis numerum occidit atque omnes armis exuit.

LII. Longius prosequi veritus, quod silvae paludesque 1
intercedebant neque etiam parvulo detrimento illorum locum relinqui videbat, omnibus suis incolumibus copiis eodem die ad Ciceronem pervenit. Institutas turres, 2
testudines munitionesque hostium admiratur; legione producta cognoscit, non decimum quemque esse reliquum militem sine vulnere: ex his omnibus iudicat rebus, 3
quanto cum periculo et quanta cum virtute res sint administratae. Ciceronem pro eius merito legionemque 4
collaudat; centuriones singillatim tribunosque militum appellat, quorum egregiam fuisse virtutem testimonio Ciceronis cognoverat. De casu Sabini et Cottae certius ex captivis cognoscit. Postero die contione habita rem 5
gestam proponit, milites consolatur et confirmat: quod 6
detrimentum culpa et temeritate legati sit acceptum, hoc aequiore animo ferendum docet, quod beneficio deorum immortalium et virtute eorum expiato incommodo neque hostibus diutina laetatio neque ipsis longior dolor relinquatur.

LIII. Interim ad Labienum per Remos incredibili celeri- 1
tate de victoria Caesaris fama perfertur, ut, cum ab hibernis Ciceronis milia passuum abesset circiter LX, eoque post horam nonam diei Caesar pervenisset, ante mediam noctem ad

portas castrorum clamor oreretur, quo clamore significatio
2 victoriae gratulatioque ab Remis Labieno fieret. Hac fama
ad Treveros perlata Indutiomarus, qui postero die castra
Labieni oppugnare decreverat, noctu profugit copiasque
3 omnes in Treveros reducit. Caesar Fabium cum sua legione
remittit in hiberna, ipse cum tribus legionibus circum Sa-
marobrivam trinis hibernis hiemare constituit et, quod tanti
motus Galliae exstiterant, totam hiemem ipse ad exercitum
4 manere decrevit. Nam illo incommodo de Sabini morte
perlato omnes fere Galliae civitates de bello consultabant,
nuntios legationesque in omnes partes dimittebant et, quid
reliqui consilii caperent atque unde initium belli fieret, ex-
plorabant nocturnaque in locis desertis concilia habebant.
5 Neque ullum fere totius hiemis tempus sine sollicitudine
Caesaris intercessit, quin aliquem de consiliis ac motu
6 Gallorum nuntium acciperet. In his ab Lucio Roscio,
quem legioni tertiae decimae praefecerat, certior factus est,
magnas Gallorum copias earum civitatum, quae Aremoricae
7 appellantur, oppugnandi sui causa convenisse neque longius
milia passuum octo ab hibernis suis afuisse, sed nuntio
allato de victoria Caesaris discessisse, adeo ut fugae similis
discessus videretur.

LIV. At Caesar principibus cuiusque vitatis ad se
evocatis alias territando, cum se scire, quae fierent, de-
nuntiaret, alias cohortando magnam partem Galliae in
2 officio tenuit. Tamen Senones, quae est civitas in primis
firma et magnae inter Gallos auctoritatis, Cavarinum, quem
Caesar apud eos regem constituerat, cuius frater Moritasgus
adventu in Galliam Caesaris cuiusque maiores regnum ob-
tinuerant, interficere publico consilio conati, cum ille prae-
sensisset ac profugisset, usque ad fines insecuti regno domoque
3 expulerunt et, missis ad Caesarem satisfaciendi causa legatis,
cum is omnem ad se senatum venire iussisset, dicto audientes
4 non fuerunt. Tantum apud homines barbaros valuit, esse

aliquos repertos principes inferendi belli, tantamque omnibus voluntatum commutationem attulit, ut praeter Aeduos et Remos, quos praecipuo semper honore Caesar habuit, alteros pro vetere ac perpetua erga populum Romanum fide, alteros pro recentibus Gallici belli officiis, nulla fere civitas fuerit non suspecta nobis. Idque adeo haud scio miran- 5
dumne sit, cum compluribus aliis de causis, tum maxime, quod ei, qui virtute belli omnibus gentibus praeferebantur, tantum se eius opinionis deperdidisse, ut a populo Romano imperia perferrent, gravissime dolebant.

LV. Treveri vero atque Indutiomarus totius hiemis nullum 1
tempus intermiserunt, quin trans Rhenum legatos mitterent, civitates sollicitarent, pecunias pollicerentur, magna parte exercitus nostri interfecta multo minorem superesse dicerent partem. Neque tamen ulli civitati Germanorum persuaderi 2
potuit, ut Rhenum transiret, cum se bis expertos dicerent, Ariovisti bello et Tencterorum transitu: non esse amplius fortunam temptaturos. Hac spe lapsus Indutiomarus nihilo 3
minus copias cogere, exercere, a finitimis equos parare, exsules damnatosque tota Gallia magnis praemiis ad se allicere coepit. Ac tantam sibi iam his rebus in Gallia auctoritatem 4
comparaverat, ut undique ad eum legationes concurrerent, gratiam atque amicitiam publice privatimque peterent.

LVI. Ubi intellexit, ultro ad se veniri, altera ex parte 1
Senones Carnutesque conscientia facinoris instigari, altera Nervios Aduatucosque bellum Romanis parare, neque sibi voluntariorum copias defore, si ex finibus suis progredi coepisset, armatum concilium indicit. Hoc more Gallorum 2
est initium belli: quo lege communi omnes puberes armati convenire consuerunt; qui ex iis novissimus convenit, in conspectu multitudinis omnibus cruciatibus affectus necatur. In eo concilio Cingetorigem, alterius principem factionis, 3
generum suum, quem supra demonstravimus Caesaris

secutum fidem ab eo non discessisse, hostem iudicat bonaque
4 eius publicat. His rebus confectis in concilio pronuntiat, arcessitum se a Senonibus et Carnutibus aliisque compluri-
5 bus Galliae civitatibus; huc iturum per fines Remorum eorumque agros populaturum ac, priusquam id faciat, castra Labieni oppugnaturum. Quae fieri velit, praecipit.

LVII. Labienus, cum et loci natura et manu munitissimis castris sese teneret, de suo ac legionis periculo nihil timebat, ne quam occasionem rei bene gerendae dimitteret,
2 cogitabat. Itaque a Cingetorige atque eius propinquis oratione Indutiomari cognita, quam in concilio habuerat, nuntios mittit ad finitimas civitates equitesque undique
3 evocat: his certum diem conveniendi dicit. Interim prope cotidie cum omni equitatu Indutiomarus sub castris eius vagabatur, alias ut situm castrorum cognosceret, alias colloquendi aut territandi causa; equites plerumque omnes tela
4 intra vallum coniciebant. Labienus suos intra munitionem continebat timorisque opinionem, quibuscumque poterat rebus, augebat.

LVIII. Cum maiore in dies contemptione Indutiomarus ad castra accederet, nocte una intromissis equitibus omnium finitimarum civitatum, quos arcessendos curaverat, tanta diligentia omnes suos custodiis intra castra continuit, ut nulla ratione ea res enuntiari aut ad Treveros perferri
2 posset. Interim ex consuetudine cotidiana Indutiomarus ad castra accedit atque ibi magnam partem diei consumit; equites tela coniciunt et magna cum contumelia verborum
3 nostros ad pugnam evocant. Nullo ab nostris dato responso, ubi visum est, sub vesperum dispersi ac dissipati discedunt.
4 Subito Labienus duabus portis omnem equitatum emittit; praecipit atque interdicit, proterritis hostibus atque in fugam coniectis (quod fore, sicut accidit, videbat) unum omnes peterent Indutiomarum, neu quis quem prius vulneret, quam

illum interfectum viderit, quod mora reliquorum spatium nactum illum effugere nolebat; magna proponit iis, qui occiderint, praemia; submittit cohortes equitibus subsidio. Comprobat hominis consilium fortuna, et cum unum omnes peterent, in ipso fluminis vado deprehensus Indutiomarus interficitur caputque eius refertur in castra; redeuntes equites, quos possunt, consectantur atque occidunt. Hac re cognita omnes Eburonum et Nerviorum, quae convenerant, copiae discedunt, pauloque habuit post id factum Caesar quietiorem Galliam.

NOTES.

N.B.—The following abbreviations are used in the Notes:—*sc.* (= *scilicet*), "understand" or "supply"; cp., "compare"; *e.g.* (= *exempli gratia*), "for example"; *i.e.* (= *id est*), "that is to say": lit., "literally."

An obelus (†) denotes that the reading of the Latin text is uncertain.

Proper names which are not mentioned in the Notes are, if of sufficient importance, included in the Index.

Ch. 1–4. *Caesar visits Hither Gaul and Illyricum to hold his assize, leaving instructions for building a special fleet for service in Britain. He exacts from turbulent Illyrian tribes hostages for their future good behaviour. Indutiomarus endeavours to raise the Treveri, but is prevented by the party of Cingetorix and the arrival of Caesar.*

[See the Index for **Illyricum,** Pirustae, **Treveri, Indutiomarus, Cingetorix,** Arduenna Silva, Rhenus, Remi.]

Ch. 1. § 1. **L. Domitio, Ap. Claudio coss.**: 54 B.C. At this period the consuls entered upon office on the 1st January, so that Caesar had been busy for some time among the Belgae, where were his *hiberna*, instead of spending the whole winter as usual in assize business (*conventus*, § 5).

quotannis: often written as two words. It means "yearly," "every year," just as *quot diebus* = daily, and *quot mensibus* = monthly.

legatis imperat . . . uti . . . curarent: *impero* here has its usual construction of a dative of the person commanded; the command itself is expressed by a quasi-final clause introduced by *ut*. This *ut* clause is only superseded (in Caesar and Cicero) by an object clause in the infinitive when the verb is a passive or deponent infinitive. An instance occurs in § 3, *has omnes actuarias imperat fieri*.

aedificandas . . . curarent: "should cause to be built." This predicative gerundive is the regular construction with *curo* in this sense. The tense of *curarent* is secondary after a historic present.

veteres: the vessels employed in the previous invasion of Britain (55 B.C.) suffered considerably in the storm on the Kentish coast.

§ 2. **humiliores**: *sc. naves;* "of less draught," so that they could easily approach the shore upon which they were beached (*subductae*) when not in actual use.

nostro mari: Caesar is speaking as a Roman, and therefore means, course, the western part of the Mediterranean.

id: "he does so," referring to the whole preceding clause.

eo magis quod: "all the more for the reason that." *Eo* is the ablative of measure of difference.

latiores: accusative, governed by *facit*.

quibus: the antecedent *eae* (sc. *sunt*) is omitted. The abl. plur of *mare* occurs nowhere else in classical Latin.

§ 3. **actuarias**: *sc. naves*, lit. "ships which are easily moved" (*ago*); these *actuariae* could be impelled by sails and oars simultaneously. *Humilitas* has here a sense different from that of *humilis*. § 2, and applies to the height of the deck above the water line, "freeboard." The less this is, the more easily can oars be used.

§ 4. **usui**: predicative dative.

armandas: *armare navem* is the regular phrase for "rigging" a vessel, whereas *instruere* is of wider meaning, "to fit out," ii. 2. The substantive *arma* is used in a similar way (Vergil, *Aen.* v. 15). *colligere arma iubet*, "he bids them take all the tackle in."

§ 5. **conventibus**: next to military matters, the administration of justice was the most important duty of the governor of a province. His whole province was divided into a number of districts (*conventus*), and once a year he attended at the chief town of each district to try cases. This is the meaning of the phrase *conventus agere*, the word *conventus* being applied both to the court and to the district.

citerioris: Gallia Cisalpina, so called as being nearer to Rome.

§ 6. **milites**: these were the auxiliary troops which the provincials were bound to furnish when bidden. They were not often required to do so, as the legions were sufficient for the defence of the provinces in most cases.

§ 7. **doceant**: all relative clauses require the subjunctive when the sense is final ("in order that").

satisfacere: absolute, "to make compensation." *Paratus* usually takes *ad* and the gerundive, but the infin. is common.

§ 8. **ad certam diem**: "by a certain day," not "on a certain day" (*certa die*). *Dies* meaning "a set time" is usually feminine.

fecerint: Caesar's words were *nisi ita feceritis* (fut.-perf. indic.) *bello civitatem persequar*. After a *present* verb of narrating (here *demonstrat*) the fut.-perf. indic. of direct statement passes into the perf. subj. of indirect statement, according to rule. Had the verb of narrating been *past* (*e.g. demonstrabat*) the pluperf. subj. would have been used (*fecissent*).

§ 9. **arbitros**: *arbiter*, from *ar* (= *ad*) and *bito* (= *eo*), means literally "one who goes to something in order to see it," and so "an eye-witness"; then "an umpire" or "adjudicator."

litem aestiment: *lis* is properly "a lawsuit," then "the subject of the lawsuit, the matter in dispute," here "the damage done." Translate "assess the damage" caused by the forays, to be made good by the Pirustae. For the mood cp. *doceant*, § 7.

Ch. 2. § 1. **ad exercitum**: this was quartered among the Belgae.

§ 2. **circuitis**: perf. part. of *circu(m)ire*, "to go round" a thing, "to inspect." Many compounds of *eo* (*e.g. transeo, adeo, ineo*) may, owing to the influence of the prepositional prefix, be used transitively, and so admit of a passive participle used personally.

singulari studio: ablative of attendant circumstance. Trans. "owing to the singular energy."

cuius: this is probably not a case of relative attraction, for we may consider that *cuius* does not stand for *quod genus*, but for *cuius generis naves*. Real instances of case-attraction of the relative (*e.g. notante iudice, quo nosti, populo*, "with the public, that judge well known to you, for censor") rarely occur outside the comedians and poets. The vessels referred to are the *actuariae* of i. §§ 2, 3.

neque multum abesse ab eo quin: the infin. clause (*abesse*) stands in dependence on *invēnit* (= *cognoscit*); *abesse* is impersonal, the direct form being *neque multum abest*, not *absunt*.

deduci: the technical word for *launching* a ship, *i.e.* drawing it *down* to the water, as *subducere* is for beaching it, *i.e.* drawing it *up* on the shore.

possint: the tense shows that *invenit*, the verb of the principal clause, is present.

§ 3. **collaudatis**: notice the force of the prefix, "having been warmly praised."

velit: subjunctive of dependent question.

traiectum . . . transmissum: both are substantives (*traiectus, -ūs*; *transmissus, -ūs*) of the fourth declension, and not to be confounded with the participles of the same form. This explains the case of *triginta milium*, which is a genitive of quality or description.

passuum: genitive dependent on *milium*, in accordance with the rule that *mille* is an adjective, but *milia* a substantive; hence we say *mille passus*, but XXX *milia passuum*.

huic rei: *i.e.* in order that the bulk of the forces might assemble at Portus Itius without fear of molestation from the Belgae.

militum: partitive genitive dependent on *quod*.

§ 4. **concilia**: these were assemblies of the chief men (*principes*) of the subject tribes, convened by Caesar at will to learn his wishes, especially his requirements in the way of troops (auxiliary) and supplies. To disobey his summons was equivalent to defection.

Ch. 3. § 1. **totius Galliae**: an abbreviated expression for *totius Galliae civitatum*. Such a figure is known as brachylogy (short speech).

§ 3. **alter**: *i.e.* Cingetorix.

cognitum est: the use of the impersonal passive makes the action prominent, rather than the persons who perform it: "as soon as it became known."

se . . . futuros: *sc. esse*, accus. and infin. dependent on *confirmavit* ("declared definitely").

in officio: *officium* is a general word for "duty," whether towards

the gods, parents, or country; when used of the last, translate by "loyalty," "allegiance."

gererentur: for the mood, cp. *velit*, ii. 3.

quaeque: *quae* + the enclitic *-que*; it is not from *quisque*.

§ 4. **cogere**: this may be either dependent upon *instituit* or a historic infinitive.

in silvam abditis: *i.e.*, taken *thither* and hidden *there*. *Iis . . . abditis* is abl. absolute.

§ 5. **non nulli**: "some," often written in one word, *nonnulli*.

†**familiaritate**: there is another reading, *auctoritate*, "influence."

†**de suis privatim rebus**: "regarding their own private affairs." The adverb is not to be joined to the verb, but qualifies *suis*; some MSS. have *privatis*.

possent: *quoniam* (like most causal particles except *cum*) almost always has the indicative. The subjunctive is here that of the "reported cause," the statement being given not as the opinion of the writer, but as that of the persons spoken of: "because (as they considered) they could not."

mittit: the subject is *Indutiomarus*.

§ 6. **discedere**: in oratio recta the speech in this and the following section would be *idcirco a meis discedere atque ad te venire nolui, quo facilius civitatem in officio continerem, ne omnis nobilitatis discessu plebs propter imprudentiam laberetur: itaque est civitas in mea potestate, et ipse, si tu permittes, ad te in castra veniam, meas civitatisque fortunas tuae fidei permittam*. The mood of *contineret* remains unchanged because of the final force of the clause ("in order that").

Ch. 4. § 1. **dicerentur**: dependent question, and so also *deterreret*.

tamen: this word may stand first in its clause when it is preceded by a concessive or conditional particle (here *etsi*). In other cases its position is that of second word. Here, of course, it belongs to *iussit*.

comparatis: an instance of the ablative absolute approaching in meaning a concessive clause. Trans. "when all his preparations had been made," or "although all his preparations had been made."

§ 2. **consolatus**: *sc. est*. The object clause of *hortor* is as usual expressed by *ut* (*ne*) and final subjunctive, *uti . . . maneret*.

§ 3. **nihilo . . . setius**: "none the less." *Sētius* (also written *sēcius*) serves as the comparative of the adverb *sēcus*, "otherwise," but the two words are not etymologically connected. *Nihilo* is the ablative of measure or degree of difference, from *nihilum*, which was afterwards abbreviated to *nihil* and *nil*. *Nihilo secius* thus corresponds both in meaning and form to *nihilominus*.

principibus . . . hos: the regular form of this sentence would be *principes convocatos conciliavit*, since the name "ablative *absolute*" implies that it is in construction independent of the finite verb. Cp. for the same irregularity, Book VII. iv. 1, *Vercingetorix, convocatis suis clientibus, facile incendit* (sc. *eos*). This irregularity is often due to the desire of greater distinctness. Naturally the longer

expression *principibus convocatis, hos* is more intelligible than the concise *principes convocatos.*

cum . . . tum: "both . . . and." Distinguish this use from that of *tum . . . cum*, "then . . . when."

merito eius: "in accordance with the deserts of Cingetorix."

a se: "by Caesar." Remember that when the demonstrative pronoun (*is*) and the reflexive (*se*) occur in the same acc. and infin. clause, the reflexive must refer to the subject of the verb of the principal sentence (*intellegebat*), the demonstrative to *another* person.

magni interesse: "it was of great importance." *Interesse* is here the infinitive of the impersonal *interest.*

magni: genitive of value (cp. *tanti, quanti,* etc.); in origin these were probably genitives of quality (*e.g. hoc magni aestimo* — "I regard this as [a thing] of great value"). The *degree of importance* with *interest* and *refert* is also expressed by adverbials in *-um, e.g. multum, plurimum.*

perspexisset: causal subjunctive, "inasmuch as he had seen"; but as it is a dependent verb in indirect statement, the subjunctive would be used even if the clause introduced by *cuius* were simply adjectival.

§ 4. The accus. and infin. clause *suam . . . minui* is explanatory of *id.*

qui . . . fuisset: "since he had been of hostile disposition." Relative clauses require the subjunctive mood when implying *causality* (since, because, etc.). In such clauses *qui* is often strengthened by *quippe, ut,* or *utpote.* Cp. *perspexisset,* § 3.

animo: ablative of quality.

Ch. 5–7. *The departure of the expedition is delayed by the attempted escape of Dumnorix. His flight and death.*

[See the Index for Meldi, **Dumnorix, Aedui.**]

Ch. 5. § 3. **milium quattuor**: genitive of description, depending upon *equitatus. Numero* ("in number") is pleonastic.

principes: not "princes," but merely "leading men," "nobles." By carrying these with him into Britain, Caesar would have a guarantee for the good behaviour of their retainers and dependants.

§ 4. **perpaucos**: notice the force of *per-* in composition: "a *very* few whose loyalty he had *thoroughly* learnt."

obsidum loco: "for (lit. in place of) hostages."

motum: "a rising," "disturbances." Such an event amongst the Cisalpine Gauls would be called a *tumultus.*

cum abesset: "when he *should* be absent"; direct form, *cum abero.*

Ch. 6. § 1. **ante**: in Book I. iii., where Dumnorix is related to have allied himself with Orgetorix the Helvetian and Casticus the Sequanian, with a view to making himself king of the Aedui.

rerum novarum: "revolution"; see last note. This is the regular

meaning of *res novae*. The genitives *rerum* and *imperii* are objective. Those which follow (*animi, auctoritatis*) are qualitative.

§ 2. **accedebat . . . quod**: the *quod* clause is in reality the subject to the impersonal *accedebat*. *Accedebat quod* may usually be translated by "moreover" or "besides."

in concilio: the general assembly of the chief men of the tribe, to be distinguished from the *concilia* convened by Caesar, ii. 4.

§ 3. **hospitibus**: properly persons of a foreign state on terms of social intercourse with Caesar, and so virtually "clients." *Hospes* is much the same as the Greek ξένος.

timeret . . . diceret: the former verb is in the subjunctive, as giving the reason which Dumnorix alleged ("because, as he said, he feared the sea"), not the true reason. The mood of *diceret* cannot be explained in the same way. There is, in fact, no grammatical reason why it should be in the subjunctive. The excuses which Dumnorix gave were (1) *mare timeo*, (2) *religionibus impedior*. Hence we should expect *quod religionibus impediretur*. But by a looseness of expression, which occurs also in Cicero and Sallust, a verb of saying is introduced and put into the subjunctive.

navigandi: objective genitive.

religionibus: "religious scruples."

§ 5. **territare**: historic infinitive, as are *interponere, poscere* (§ 6). The infinitive is thus used only in the present tense, and of events of which it is not the *sequence in time* so much as the mere *occurrence* that is important. Hence it is used to indicate (1) hurried and confused events, (2) passionate actions. In prose of the best period the idiom is confined to principal sentences.

fieri: the oratio obliqua depends on the notion of saying implied in *territare*, "alarmed by saying that." Instances of this idiom are of constant occurrence.

nobilitate: ablative of separation.

§ 6. **fidem interponere**: "he pledged his honour to the rest, and demanded their oath that they would," etc. The consecutive clause *ut . . . administrarent* gives the substance of the demand, and is therefore appositive to, or explanatory of, *iusiurandum*.

ex usu Galliae: "to the advantage of Gaul." Compare the force of the preposition in *e re mea*, "to my advantage," *e republica*, "for the good of the state."

Ch. 7. § 1. tantum dignitatis: the genitive is partitive. Such a phrase is slightly less definite than *tantam dignitatem*. So *quid rei est?* = "what ever is the matter?" *quae res est?* = "what is happening?"

coercendum: gerundive (passive verbal adjective), regularly used in the case of transitive verbs. On the other hand, *prospiciendum* (§ 2) is the gerund (active verbal noun), being from *prospicere* used intransitively: lit. "there was to be a looking forward that," etc. *Prospiciendum* (sc. *esse*) is of course an indirect statement dependent on *statuebat*.

§ 2. **sibi**: referring to Caesar, the subject of the main verb *statuebat*.

§ 3. **commoratus**: "while staying," not "having stayed." So *ratus*, "thinking," *veritus*, "fearing," and other deponent perfect participles.

Corus: the north-west wind, also spelt *Caurus* and *Chōrus* (distinguish from *chŏrus*). It would prevent Caesar's fleet from putting out for the coast of Britain, and is the prevalent wind, as Caesar says, for the greater part of the year (*temporis*). *Ventus* is in apposition; cp. *urbs Roma*, etc.

dabat operam: "took pains." *Opera*, *-ae*, conveys the idea of service, care, attention; *opus* that of a mechanical task. *Operae* (pl.) = "bands of workmen," abstract for concrete.

§ 4. **†conscendere in naves**: the preposition, found here in some MSS., is usually omitted in Caesar; it is found in Cicero's letters.

§ 5. **domum**: accusative of the goal of motion.

§ 6. **retrahi**: according to rule, verbs of commanding, with the exception of *iubeo*, require the object-clause in the subjunctive with *ut*. But the infinitive of a passive or deponent verb is sometimes found. See note on *uti . . . curarent*, i. 1.

§ 7. **faciat . . . pareat**: the primary sequence is retained here after the historic present (*iubet*) for the sake of vividness. Caesar's own words would be *si vim faciet neque parebit, interficiatur*.

pro sano: "like a sane man."

praesentis: *sc. Caesaris*.

qui neglexisset: causal subjunctive; cp. *fuisset*, iv. 4.

§ 8. **fidem**: the meanings of *fides* are very various: (1) active, "trust" in a person, and so (2) "confidence," and (3) "belief"; (4) passive, "credit," and so (5) "good faith" or "loyalty"; and (6) a "promise" or "obligation," whence comes (7) "help." The last is the meaning here.

Ch. 8–11. *Second landing of Caesar in Britain. He forces the passage of the Stour, but is recalled by a disaster to his fleet. He fortifies a naval camp, returns, and captures a British oppidum.*

[See the Index for **Labienus**, Atrius, **Cassivellaunus**, **Tamesis**]

Ch. 8. § 1. **†rem frumentariam**: "commissariat," especially grain for bread. There is another reading, *rei frumentariae* (dat.), the verb *provideo* admitting either case.

pro tempore: "with a view to season and circumstances."

§ 2. **quinque legionibus**: the force put at Caesar's disposal by the *Lex Vatinia* was three legions, to which the senate added another (Introd. § 3). He raised, however, five others at various times on his own authority, and ultimately got the act sanctioned by a senatorial grant for their maintenance.

pari . . . reliquerat: "a force of cavalry equal to that which he had left," *i.e.* 2000 (§ 1). The antecedent to *quem*, if expressed, would be *numero* (dat.).

ad solis occasum: "towards sunset"; not "westward," as is shown by the mention of *Africus* (sc. *ventus*), the south-west wind. This wind took its name from its coming, at Rome, from the direction of Carthaginian Africa.

circiter: here an adverb, as the case of *nocte* shows.

relictam: *i.e.* the fleet had drifted on the tide in a north-east direction, so that at daybreak it lay to the east of the Kentish coast, in the neighbourhood of the North Foreland. Unable to see the low coast of Essex across the estuary of the Thames, Caesar believed that he had sailed quite past the island, and had therefore "left it behind." On the turn of the tide (*aestus*) he rowed south-west towards Deal, which is supposed to have been the scene of his landing.

§ 4. **admodum**: "up to measure," and so "quite," "greatly."

vectoriis gravibusque navigiis: "with heavy-laden transport ships." *Vectoriis* and *gravibus* are both adjectives qualifying *navigiis*, which is a kind of instrumental ablative with *adaequarunt*, "they rivalled."

non intermisso . . . labore: ablative absolute.

§ 6. **cum . . . convenissent**: concessive, "although . . . had assembled."

annotinis: "last year's." It is derived from *annus*, as *diutinus* from *diu*.

sui commodi: the genitive is that of the head under which a thing is classified, and stands as complement to *quas*, the object of *fecerat*. Cp. the phrases *lucri facere*, "to put under the head of gain," *i.e.* "to make a profit of"; *compendii facere*, "to save."

amplius octingentae erant visae: "were seen to the number of 800 and more." *Quam* is omitted (as often) after *amplius* without affecting the construction. *Octingentae* is secondary predicate.

Ch. 9. § 1. **cognovit**: we may say "had learnt," but the Latin language uses the pluperfect after *ubi* only when stress is laid on the completion of the action.

praesidio: predicative dative, while *navibus* is dative of the indirect object.

essent: the mood is due to the final sense of the clause.

de tertia vigilia: "in the course of the third watch," *i.e.* between midnight and 3 a.m.

veritus navibus: "anxious for his vessels," dative of advantage.

eo . . . quod: see note on i. 2.

molli atque aperto: "a shelving, open beach," where *subductio* could easily be performed if necessary, and where there was nothing to conceal the approach of an enemy. Others refer *molli* to the soft sand and shingle of the beach, and *aperto* to freedom from rocks.

†**praesidio**: dative with *praefecit*, while *navibus* is dative of advantage. An easier reading is *praesidio navibusque*, "placed in command of the guard and the ships."

§ 3. **flumen**: the Great Stour, which barred Caesar's advance to

the interior. The *locus superior* would be the higher ground on the west bank.

§ 4. **arboribus . . . succisis** : abl. absolute. The *munimentum* was merely a barrier formed by felling the trees and allowing them to fall in lines.

§ 5. **rari** : secondary predicate, "fought in small bands." *Propugnare ex* is "to discharge missiles from" a place.

§ 6. **testudine** : the "tortoise" was the name given to the covering formed by a body of legionaries locking their shields together above their heads, and so approaching the enemy's wall to fire or undermine it, or, as in this case, to bring up earth with which to form a mound (*agger*), up which, when its height equalled the enemy's barricade, a storming party could advance.

§ 7. **eos** : *i.e. milites legionis septimae.* This is the subject to *prosequi*, to which the object is *fugientes.*

munitioni : *i.e.* for forming the ditch (*fossa*) and rampart (*vallum*) which enclosed every Roman encampment, even when a halt was made for a single night only.

Ch. 10. § 1. **postridie eius diei**: "on the morrow." *Postridie* regularly takes a genitive, and so *pridie*, though both require the accusative in expressions of date, *e.g. postridie Kalendas, pridie Idus.* For the redundant expression *postridie eius diei*, cp. the modern French *aujourd'hui*, lit. "on the day of to-day."

in expeditionem : "in flying column." An *expeditio* is the march of *milites expediti.*

§ 2. **aliquantum** : like *aliquot*, this means "a considerable portion." The genitive *itineris* is partitive.

extremi : "(only) the rear-guard" of the Roman column.

qui . . . nuntiarent : final subjunctive.

†**in litore eiectas**: "stranded on the beach"; there is another reading *in litus*, "cast up on the beach."

subsisterent . . . possent: subjunctive, as giving the reasons alleged by Q. Atrius.

Ch. 11. § 1. †**in itinere resistere**: there is another reading, *itinere desistere*, "to forego their march."

§ 2. **viderentur** : note that in English we say "*it seemed* they could be repaired," using an impersonal construction; whereas the Latin uses *videor* personally. So "it is said that Caesar encouraged them" is *dicitur eos hortatus esse Caesar* (not *Caesarem hortatum*).

§ 3. **fabros**: in Caesar's time the engineers formed a separate corps, distinct from the legion, and none had been brought to Britain. Any legionary who happened to have a knowledge of carpentry, etc., was in this case taken to supply the want.

§ 4. **Labieno** : left in command in Belgica. *Scribere* as a rule is followed by *ad* and the accusative, implying "motion" rather than "recipient."

†**posset . . . instituat**: unless we adopt the reading *possit* there is a confusion of historic and primary sequence. In direct speech the letter ran, *quam plurimas poteris iis legionibus, quae sunt apud te, naves institue*. The confusion is worse in the mood of *sunt*, which is quoted straight from the letter, though *apud eum* is oblique. According to rule the verb should be *sint* (which some editors read here), as it is part of the contents of the letter, *i.e.* of the reported words.

§ 7. **easdem . . . praesidio navibus**: see ix. 1.

§ 8. **summa**: the substantive. *Summa imperii*="the command in chief."

milia passuum LXXX.: Caesar estimates the distance from his camp by Deal to the point where he struck the Thames between Kingston and Windsor. The territory of Cassivellaunus probably included that of the Cassi (Hertfordshire and Buckinghamshire, where the name still lingers, *e.g.* Cassiobury). All Britain south of the Thames is to Caesar *maritima*.

§ 9. **reliquis**: especially the Trinobantes. See **xx.**, *sqq.*

Ch. 12-14. *A digression on the position and climate of Britain, and the manners of its inhabitants.*

[See the Index for Belgium, **Cantium, Hispania, Hibernia, Mona, Germania.**]

Ch. 12. § 1. **natos in insula**: *i.e.* "indigenous." To be sprung from the soil (autochthonous) was deemed a guarantee of old and honourable lineage.

memoria proditum: *sc. esse*, "that it is handed down by tradition," infinitive dependent on *dicunt*, and having as subject the clause *quos natos (esse) in insula*.

§ 2. **quibus orti**: the relative, of course, refers to *civitatum*, and *civitatibus* is repeated so that the reader may not refer the relative to *nominibus*. In the preceding clause we might have expected *nominibus earum* (not *iis*) *civitatum*. Several of the tribes which had settled in Belgica sent emigrant bodies across the Straits (Introd. § 6). Thus there were Atrebates and Belgae on either side of the Channel.

§ 4. †**nummo aureo**: the Britons already used gold coins, so that there is no need to bracket these words as some do. On the other hand, copper coins were of later make, so that the reading *aureo* is to be preferred to *aereo*, and the words *aut aere*, which some editors read after *utuntur*, are probably spurious.

taleis . . . examinatis: "bars of iron adjusted to a certain weight." This was the original currency in Greece and Italy. For a long time iron money was the only kind of coin recognised by law among the Spartans.

plumbum album: "tin," worked from the earliest times in Cornwall, which Caesar apparently believed to be an inland region. *Mediterraneus* in good Latin can only mean "inland." Iron was till the last century or so extensively worked in the Sussex hills.

§ 5. **materia**: "timber." Caesar would seem to be wrong in saying there was neither beech nor pine in Britain.

§ 6. **animi voluptatisque causa**: "for their diversion and pleasure." **remissioribus frigoribus**: "the cold being less severe" (ablative absolute).

Ch. 13. § 1. **alter angulus**: Caesar imagines the coast from Kent to Cornwall to lie parallel to that of Gaul. One corner is in Kent; the farther corner (*inferior*) he imagines to look to the south, and to lie off Spain, towards the north coast of which is to some extent turned (*vergit*) the second or western side of the island. The third side faces north, and Caesar imagines it to run in a westerly direction from the North Foreland.

inferior: "the more southerly corner," corresponding to *alter angulus*. This is of course the Land's End.

§ 2. **dimidio**: ablative expressing the amount of difference with a comparative.

transmissus: genitive after *pari spatio*. *Pari spatio* is an ablative of description.

atque: "as." *Par, idem, similis, alius*, and the adverbs *pariter, aliter, aeque*, are followed by *ac* or *atque* in the sense of "as" or "than."

§ 3. **hoc medio cursu**: we say "in the middle *of* this passage." Cp. iv. 4, *hoc dolore exarsit*, "he was angered by the smart *of this*."

†**subiectae**: *se. esse*. There is another reading *obiectae*.

dies: accusative of duration.

sub bruma: "at mid-winter." *Sub* with the ablative = "at"; with the accusative = "immediately before *or* after," "close about." The derivation of *bruma* is *brevima* (*se. dies*), an archaic superlative of *brevis*. It means "the shortest day," and so "the winter solstice" (December 21st), and "winter" generally.

§ 4. **ex aqua mensuris**: "by measurements by means of the water-clock," a contrivance on the principle of the hour-glass, indicating the course of time by the gradual exhaustion of the contained water. It was known by its Greek name of *clepsydra* (κλεψύδρα). *Nisi*, in the sense of "except that," does not affect the mood of the following verb.

§ 5. **illorum**: referring to the *non nulli* of § 3, Greek writers on geography. The chief of them was Pytheas of Massilia, whom Polybius averred to be "the greatest of liars." He put the circumference of Britain at more than 40,000 stadia (=5,000 miles)! His date was about 330 B.C. There was also an account by a Carthaginian navigator of his visit to Ireland and the Scilly Isles, which Festus Avienus translated. Its fragments are known as the *Ora Maritima*.

§ 6. **eius angulus lateris**: the angle including Cantium.

§ 7. †**viciens centenum milium**: genitive of quality with *insula*. The distributive numerals regularly prefer the genitive plural in *-um* for *-orum*. The MSS. here have *centum*; the conjecture *centenum* is based on the assumption that normal usage requires a distributive. *Passuum* is dependent on *milium*; see note on ii. 3.

Ch. 14. § 1. **consuetudine**: another example of brachylogy; cp. iii. 1. The meaning is that *their habits* do not much differ from the Gallic habits.

§ 2. **interiores**: "those further inland."

lacte et carne: ablatives of means, with which that of material is almost identical.

vitro: "woad." The word usually means glass, and hence anything of a glassy blue or green. It seems probable that the glass of the ancients was not commonly colourless, as ours is; *vitreus color*, for example, means "sea-green."

hoc: "by this means."

§ 3. **capillo . . . parte**: ablatives of description. The distinction commonly laid down between this and the gen. of quality is that the genitive refers to more permanent qualities, such as those of *character*, the ablative to accidental attributes.

§ 4. **deni duodenique**: "parties of ten and twelve."

uxores: the husbands had not *a* wife, but their *wives* in common. It is not unlikely that Caesar was wrongly informed on this point. Among the arguments advanced against this statement are—(1) such a custom was practically unknown among Aryan nations; (2) it would ultimately have led to a serious decrease in the population, and Caesar has just spoken of Britain's *infinita multitudo hominum*.

quo: adverb, equivalent to *ad quos*. The word *deducere* is technical in the sense of escorting a bride to her husband's home; hence *deducta est* = "was married."

Ch. 15–19. *After defeating the Britons, Caesar fords the Thames. Cassivellaunus changes his tactics.*

[See the Index for Trebonius.]

Ch. 15. § 1. †**tamen ut**: some MSS. insert the antecedent *ita* before *tamen*.

fuerint . . . compulerint: the perfect subjunctive is often found after a historic tense in a consecutive sentence, especially where the action is completed.

§ 3. **imprudentibus**: "off their guard" (*in-*, "not," + *pro-videns*).

munitione: see on ix. 7. There was no regular legionary corps of engineers and sappers (cp. xi. 3), but each legionary was trained to work at fortification, and carried, besides his arms, etc., a number of entrenching tools and from three to twelve stakes (*valli*). The camp was usually rectangular, and the earth excavated from the *fossa* was thrown up on the inner side as the *vallum*, which was surmounted by a stockade formed of the *valli*. There were four gates, of which that facing the enemy was the *porta praetoria*; that on the opposite side was the *porta decumana*; and the two others were *porta dextra* and *sinistra*. The whole interior space was divided into small rectangles by wide roads (*viae*) and passages (*cardines*) intersecting at right angles. Each corps had its own station, and there

were special positions for legionaries, auxiliaries, allies, and officers. A space of 200 feet in width between the tents and *vallum* was left unoccupied, and was known as the *intervallum*. Near the *porta praetoria* stood the *praetorium* with the general's tent. A space (*forum*) near the *praetorium* was sufficiently large to allow of the whole force assembling there (*in contione*) to hear the orders or speeches of the general from the *tribunal*, a platform of turf adjoining his tent.

in statione: "on outpost-duty." The *portae* were always covered by a strong outlying detachment.

§ 4. **subsidio**: predicative dative.

his primis: "these too the first cohorts of two legions." At this date, the old property distinctions having disappeared, each man took in the legion the place merited by his courage, experience, and activity. Therefore the pick of the legion would comprise the first cohorts, and the tenth cohort would be the least trustworthy. See Introd. § 6.

intermisso . . . spatio: here of space, but in § 3 of time; "halting at a short distance from one another." (Couple *inter se* with *intermisso*.) It was through this opening that the Britons cut their way.

novo genere: especially the chariots, as described in the next chapter.

§ 5. **tribunus militum**: Introd. § 7.

submissis: "sent to their support," a common meaning of *sub-* in composition. So *succurro, subvenio*.

Ch 16. § 1. possent . . . auderent: these verbs give *true* reasons, but are in the subjunctive as being part of the indirect statement introduced by *intellectum est*. The same applies to the subjunctive imperfects in § 2.

§ 2. **consulto**: "on purpose," an "adverbial ablative absolute." Similarly we have *sortito*, "by lot."

pedibus: "on foot."

dispari proelio: *i.e.* the *essedarii* when fighting on foot after dismounting were more than a match for the Roman *equites*. Caesar's cavalry was chiefly Gallic, with a sprinkling of Spanish and Numidian horsemen, and he had no great opinion of it.

§ 3. **et cedentibus et insequentibus**: "upon us when retreating and when pursuing," dat., governed by *inferebat*; or perhaps abl. abs., "when the Britons were retreating and when they were pursuing."

§ 4. **rari**: "in small companies," as in ix. 5.

stationes: "detachments." Contrast *in statione*, xv. 3.

exciperent: "one body relieved another in succession." *Integer* means "unwearied" (*in-*, "not," + *tango*).

Ch. 17. § 2. sic uti . . . absisterent: "with such fury as not to refrain from attacking the standards." In some editions the reading *sic uti* is altered to *sicubi* and *non* is omitted: "whenever they (the foragers) quitted," etc. But the subjunctive is not used by Caesar

to express indefinite frequency, that usage being a characteristic of Livy and of historians of the Silver Age.

§ 3. **subsidio confisi**: "confident in the support of." *Subsidio* is probably ablative, as *confido* is regularly constructed with the ablative of things, and the dative of persons or (less commonly) of things.

praecipites: part of the predicate: "in headlong rout."

§ 5. **ex hac fuga**: *ex* is common in the sense of "after."

Ch. 18. § 1. **uno loco**: the exact spot is quite unknown. Various authorities prefer to place it between Brentford and Kingston, between Kingston and Windsor, even as far up as Wallingford, and as far down as Westminster. The river bed has altered from causes natural and artificial since Caesar's day. Perhaps the theory which makes Caesar cross the Stour at Ashford, the Medway near Maidstone, and—continuing his march in the same direction—the Thames near Walton, is as credible as any.

transiri: cp. *circuitis*, ii. 2.

§ 2. **animum advertit**: sometimes written as one word, *animadverto*, the phrase means "to turn one's attention to," and so "to observe," in which sense it takes the ordinary accus. and infin. construction. When followed by *in* and an accus. of the person, it signifies "to punish."

ad . . . ripam: "near the other bank." Not quite the same as *in ripa*.

§ 5. **cum . . . exstarent**: *cum* is here the conjunction used concessively, "though," *capite solo* being an ablative of manner: "by the head only."

dimitterent: "abandoned."

Ch. 19. § 1. This section gives the *consilium* mentioned in xviii. 1. Cassivellaunus showed talent in his plan of action; for the legions, invincible in a pitched battle, were ill fitted for guerilla warfare, and the cavalry of Caesar had been proved no match for the *essedarii* of the Britons. The occupation of the ford of the Stour at Ashford was also well planned (ix. 3).

paulum: this word, rarely found as an adjective, is common as a noun, but only in the accusative and ablative. Each case, however, retains its proper significance of *extension* and *measure* respectively. Hence it is correct to write *paulum moratus*, but *paulo diutius moratus*.

§ 2. **eiecerat**: indicative of indefinite frequency. The stock example is *Cum rosam viderat, tum incipere ver arbitrabatur*, "Whenever he saw the rose in bloom, he would consider that spring was commencing."

†omnibus viis: some MSS. insert *notis* after *viis*.

hoc metu: "fear of this." See on xiii. 3.

§ 3. **relinquebatur**: "the one course remaining was . . ."

agmine: this word means (1) a herd or band; (2) an army in marching order; (3) the line of march (as here); (4) an army generally.

discedi: impersonal; so too *noceretur*.

labore atque itinere: "with (great) trouble while on the march," because, for such destructive warfare, the cumbrous and slowly moving legions were an unwieldy substitute for small bodies of light troops.

Ch. 20–23. *The Trinobantes submit, and are followed by other tribes. Capture of Cassivellaunus' stronghold. He incites the Kentish tribes to attack the naval camp, and soon after makes peace. Caesar returns to Gaul.*

[See the Index for **Trinobantes**, Mandubracius, Cenimagni, Segontiaci, Ancalites, Bibroci, Cassi, Commius,]

Ch. 20. § 1. **Caesaris fidem secutus**: "relying upon Caesar's good faith."

ipse: English requires the insertion of a conjunction, *e.g.* "while."

sese dedituros: the subject (*se*) is omitted to avoid repetition.

§ 2. **Cassivellauni**: subjective genitive, "wrongs done by Cassivellaunus"; cp. *militum iniuria*, xxi. 1.

qui praesit: the antecedent to *qui* is omitted, it being implied that Mandubracius himself was the person they desired. The mood of *praesit* and *obtineat* is due to the final sense of the clause.

obtineat: the word signifies "to hold"; much less often "to obtain."

§ 4. **ad numerum**: "to the (full) number." Cp. *ad diem*, *ad tempus*, etc., "by the day, time, appointed."

Ch. 21. § 1. **prohibitis**: "protected."

§ 2. **eo loco**: the place where these *legationes* met Caesar, somewhere on the southern borders of Hertfordshire.

oppidum: this is the regular name in Caesar for a Celtic stronghold, and does not imply a walled town (*urbs*). It was, as the next section explains, nothing more than a stockade with the usual ditch and rampart which characterise so-called "British camps." The site is supposed to have been at St. Albans.

satis magnus: "quite a large number." *Satis* is very common in this sense. *Pecoris* is here a collective noun, as in § 6, though we have *pecora atque homines* in xix. 1.

convenerit: perf. subj. after the primary tense *cognoscit*. The mood is due to the clause being part of the statement of the informers.

§ 3. **incursionis vitandae causa**: one of the ways of expressing *purpose* in Latin.

Ch. 22. § 1. **de improviso**: "by surprise." The use of adjectives of three terminations as substantives depending on prepositions is very common in Livy and Vergil; so we have in Livy *ex infimo*, "of low birth"; *ex composito*, "by agreement"; *in aequo*, "on level soil"; *ex propinquo*, "from a short distance"; and in Vergil, *per tacitum*, "quietly," etc. It is rarely found with adjectives of less than three terminations.

§ 3. **civitatum**: *i.e.* those enumerated above, xx. 1; xxi. 1.

§ 4. **extrahi**: "wasted." The meaning is not that the brief remainder of the summer could be made longer, but that the time would be spun out fruitlessly.

quid . . . penderet: *penderet* is deliberative subjunctive, and the clause is a dependent question.

vectigalis: partitive genitive, depending on *quid*. *Vectigal* is the general term for any regular tax, and includes the tribute paid by the provincials and other conquered peoples, as well as duties on goods imported and exported, tithes for the use of public land (*decumae*), rent-dues from the public pastures (*scriptura*), and the revenues from state monopolies, such as salt-factories and mines. The word *tributum* signifies (1) in particular, an extraordinary property-tax levied upon Romans as occasion required up to 169 B.C., when it was finally discontinued: and (2) fixed tribute in general, as opposed to variable *vectigalia*. This British tribute was never paid, a fact which gave the emperor Claudius an excuse for attacking and partly conquering the island, 43 A.D.

Ch. 23. § 2. **deductis**: "launched." Cp. ii. 2.

commeatibus: "passages."

§ 3. **portaret**: "such as was being used for conveying troops." The only loss was of vessels which had already landed their complement of troops. *Quae* requires the subjunctive because of its consecutive force.

desideraretur: "was missed *or* lost."

§ 4. **prioris commeatus expositis militibus**: lit. "those of the first crossing, after landing the soldiers," *i.e.* "those which had made the first crossing, and had landed their soldiers," the full expression being *et quae erant prioris commeatus expositis militibus*.

locum caperent: "made their port," *i.e.* reached harbour. The verb is co-ordinate with *desideraretur*, and depends on *uti* at the beginning of § 3, as also does *reicerentur*.

§ 5. **aequinoctium subesset**: Caesar appears to have landed in Britain about the middle of July, and to have left towards the end of September (the time of the autumnal equinox), his stay thus being of about ten weeks.

angustius: "somewhat closely," "rather more closely than usual," so as to make the remaining vessels do duty for the whole fleet. This is known as the "absolute" use of the comparative.

§ 6. **solvisset**: *sc. naves*.

inita: like *circuitis*, ii. 2.

Ch. 24, 25. *Owing to the scarcity of corn Caesar is obliged to distribute his army among several tribes for the winter. The Carnutes murder their chief Tasgetius, and Caesar takes measures to prevent a revolt.*

[See the Index for Samarobriva, **Cicero, Labienus, Crassus,** Carnutes.]

Ch. 24. § 1. **concilio**: cp. ii. 4, *n.*

Samarobrivae: locative.

aliter ac: see xiii. 2, *n.* In the previous year, for instance, the army had been quartered for the winter amongst the Belgae. On the present occasion, with the exception of the legion amongst the Esubii (W. Normandy), the whole force of eight and a half legions is still retained in Belgic Gaul (Plancus and one legion subsequently move to the Carnutes of Celtica, xxv.), in view of more than probable insurrections; but they are distributed through six cantonments, it being impossible to assure supplies for so large a number at one spot. For particulars of the *legati* here mentioned see Index.

§ 3. **quaestorem**: a *quaestor* accompanied every governor of a province as Comptroller of Finances. He paid out and received all sums due from or to the state, and supervised the collection of the taxes. If the province was an armed one he was paymaster of the forces; and therefore it came about that he accompanied any military force, whether under the command of a regular or extraordinary *imperator*. His functions were not in theory military, but in case of need he might, as here, be commissioned to act as a *legatus*, and take command of an army corps.

§ 4. **proxime**: "most recently." As Caesar's *provincia* extended as far into Italy as the frontiers of Etruria (*R. Marra*) and Umbria (*R. Rubico*), he was able to raise troops there, and used his powers to levy four legions, two in 58 B.C., two in the following year. The odd half-legion was perhaps made up of all classes.

trans Padum: *i.e.* north of the Po, the point of view being Rome.

§ 7. **tamen**: *i.e.* although apparently very much scattered.

continebantur: "were joined by a (line of one) hundred miles (in each case);" *i.e.*, no one legion was more than this distance from the next.

§ 8. **cognovisset**: the subjunctive is used because of the implication of "*purposed* waiting" in *quoad*.

Ch. 25. § 1. **summo loco**: *locus* is one of the few substantives which may be used in the ablative without a preposition, but usually with an adjective, to express "place where."

§ 2. **opera**: abl. governed by *fuerat usus*, pluperf. of *utor*.

maiorum locum: *i.e.* the rank of king, for which he would, of course, be dependent upon and obedient to Caesar.

§ 3. **tertium annum**: "for the third year." The accusative is that of duration. With *regnantem* join *hunc, sc. Tasgetium*. *Inimicus* is a private enemy, as opposed to a foe of the state (*hostis*).

§ 4. **quod . . . pertinebat**: "because the matter concerned a large number." It was a popular reaction against the Romans and monarchy alike.

§ 5. **quaestoribus**: by dividing his army Caesar made it necessary to appoint sub-quaestors for each portion. See note on xxiv. 3.

hibernis: dative of "work contemplated."

Ch. 26–31. *The Eburones attack the camp of Sabinus and Cotta, and are repulsed. Their chief Ambiorix, alleging that a general rising of the Gauls is on foot, offers the Romans a safe-conduct through his territory. After a heated discussion the council of war agree, on the advice of Sabinus, to accept it.*

[See the Index for Ambiorix, **Indutiomarus**, Aduatuci, **Ariovistus.**]

Ch. 26. § 1. **diebus . . . ventum est**: "within about fifteen days of their getting into winter quarters." *Diebus* is ablative of "time within which." *Circiter* is an adverb, and so has no influence on the case.

tumultus: used here of Gauls other than those in Italy, for whose risings it was the accepted term. Cp. v. 4, note on *motum*.

§ 2. **praesto fuissent**: lit. "had been at hand for," *i.e.* "had met." The phrase takes a dative like *obviam esse, ire*.

Treveri: genitive qualifying *Indutiomari*.

oppugnatum: the supine in *-um* may express the purpose (viewed as "the goal of motion") only with verbs of motion.

§ 4. **aliqui**: the adjective is *aliqui, aliqua, aliquod*, the pronoun *aliquis, aliquid*, but the masculine forms are sometimes interchanged, just as *qui* (both indefinite and interrogative) sometimes stands for *quis*, and *vice versa*.

habere sese: in oratio recta, *habemus quae de re communi dicere volumus, quibus rebus controversias minui posse speramus.*

posse: *spero* and other verbs of hoping require a future infinitive when referring to the future. *Posse*, however, having no future infinitive, is regularly used in the present.

Ch. 27. § 1. **eques**: the original Roman cavalry comprised eighteen centuries of citizens, rated at a specially high figure in the Servian census. They received no pay, were provided with horses by the state (*equites equo publico*), and were the most honourable arm of the service. In the year 405 B.C., however, there was created another class of cavalry, who found their own horses (*equites equo privato*) and received daily pay, as did the infantry from that date. Gradually the original class of *equites* disappeared from active duty, and by the time of the second Punic War (218 B.C.) they remained only as an honorary body, meeting yearly on the Ides of July, to celebrate the festival of Castor and Pollux, in memory of the appearance of these heroes at Lake Regillus. In 123 B.C. Gaius Gracchus gave the name a new meaning. He applied it to all Romans, not being senators or sons of senators, whose property amounted to 400,000 sesterces (£3,400), and gave to the class so formed a political status. These formed the *equester ordo*, and in this sense the term *eques Romanus* is regularly used from Gracchus' time onwards.

ventitare: notice the frequentative form, "to make frequent visits."

apud quos: "in whose presence." This meaning, common in

Caesar, is to be distinguished from that which the preposition bears in such phrases as *apud Ciceronem*, "in Cicero's house."

§ 2. **debere**: dependent upon *confiteri*, which represents *confiteor* of oratio recta. The reasons for this admission are contained in the first and third *quod* clauses, which are in the subjunctive as being dependent clauses in oratio obliqua. The second *quod* is the relative.

stipendio: for *stipi-pendium*, from *stips*, "small coin," and *pendo*, "to pay": it signifies (1) a soldier's pay; (2) the campaign in which it is earned, whence *stipendia facere* = "to serve in the army"; (3) the tribute paid by conquered peoples, who are hence called *stipendiarii*. In this third sense it is sometimes replaced by the less technical use of *tributum* or *vectigal*. See xxii. 4, *n.*

quodque ei: more accurate writing would require *sibi*, as the person referred to is, of course, Ambiorix, the speaker.

obsidum numero: adverbial ablative of manner; lit. "in the category of hostages."

apud se: referring here to the nominative of the dependent clause (*Aduatuci*), as there can be no question of the meaning. So *suae saluti*, § 7,

§ 3. **quod fecerit de oppugnatione**: "what he had done in the matter of the siege." Strict sequence would require *fecisset* (in oratio recta, *feci*), but the perfect is preferred to the pluperfect for the sake of vividness, so that the tense, if not the mood, used by the speaker may be retained. So, too, the present is used instead of the imperfect; cp. *sit*, *confidat*, below, § 4, and other instances in this chapter.

coactu: many verbal substantives in *-us* (fourth declension) are found in the ablative only; *e.g. iussu, iniussu.*

suaque . . . multitudinem: in oratio recta, *meaque sunt huius modi imperia, ut non minus habeat iuris in me multitudo, quam ego in multitudinem.* The partitive genitive *iuris* depends on *minus.*

§ 4. **potuerit**: cp. *fecerit*, § 3 (in oratio recta, *potuit*). The subject is *civitas.*

imperitus rerum: "inexperienced." The genitive (objective) regularly follows such adjectives as *nescius, gnarus, ignarus.*

§ 5. **hibernis oppugnandis**: dative of the work contemplated, specially frequent with gerundives. The construction is not usual in Latin of the best period, which prefers *ad* with an accusative gerund or gerundive; *e.g.* here we might say *ad hiberna oppugnanda.*

dictum: "appointed." When *dies* refers to a set day, as here, it is usually feminine.

alterae: dative. This, the older form, is found in Plautus, Terence, and Nepos.

subsidio: predicative dative.

§ 6. **negare**: absolutely, "to say no." The verb is also used transitively, "to refuse (decline to give) a thing to a person," in which sense it may be used in the passive; *e.g., qui conubium finitimis negassent*, Liv. I. ix. 14; *id obstinate sibi negari vidit*, above, vi. 4.

initum: *sc. esse.*

§ 7. **pro pietate**: "on the score of duty *or* patriotism." Cp. *pro hospitio*, below. *Pietas* signifies (1) the duty of men to their kindred; (2) of men to the gods, "piety"; and (3) of men to their mother-country, "patriotism." In oratio recta the sentence runs *quoniam . . . satisfeci, habeo . . .*

§ 8. **conductam**: "hired," *i.e.* mercenary.

§ 9. **ipsorum . . . deducere**: "it is for you to decide whether you choose to withdraw your men from their winter quarters, and to conduct," etc. The indirect question *utrumne* depends on the idea of consideration contained in *consilium*.

§ 10 **illud**: like *id*, this pronoun in the neuter often serves to introduce what follows. It is here explained by the clause *tutum iter per fines daturum*. As subject to *daturum* (*esse*) must be understood *se*.

§ 11. **quod hibernis levetur**: "because it was thereby relieved from (the burden of) the winter quarters." To provide supplies for a force of any magnitude during a whole winter was, of course, a heavy burden. The section would in oratio recta be *Quod cum facio* (temporal, "and in doing this"), *et civitati consulo, quod hibernis levatur, et Caesari pro eius meritis gratiam refero.*

habita: *orationem, contionem habere*, are the regular phrases for "to make a speech," "deliver an address."

Ch. 28. § 1. **hac re**: explained by the clause *quod . . . credendum*.

vix erat credendum: "it was scarcely credible." The nominative gerund frequently implies the possibility of an occurrence, rather than its necessity, after a negative or the quasi-negative *vix*; so *credendum* = "credible."

§ 2. **consilium**: "staff-council," including the *legati*, *tribuni*, and *primipili*, or *primorum ordinum centuriones* (Introd. § 7). *Consilium* is used here as a collective noun, whence the use of *eos* to refer to the members of the council. *Consilium* and *concilium* both denote an assembly, but the former means "an assembly for consultation," the latter "an assembly, public meeting," called to hear speeches, not to express an opinion. *Consilium*, of course, is also abstract, "counsel."

§ 3. **agendum . . . discedendum**: see vii. 1, note on *coercendum*.

§ 4. **munitis**: the *hiberna* were fortified on the same general plan as the daily *castra*, with the addition of redoubts, bastions, and towers, while the *tentoria* of active service were replaced by huts (*casae*) roofed with thatch.

testimonio: predicative dative; "a proof of this was the fact that . . ." The word *rem* is explained by the following *quod*-clause. The oratio obliqua depends still on *docebant*, 'they pointed out," and continues to the end of the chapter.

ultro: "and they had inflicted considerable loss on the enemy to boot." *Ultro* implies the occurrence of something beyond what was to be expected, and here implies that to have withstood the attack of Ambiorix would have been all that was to be looked for.

sustinuerint: vivid for *sustinuissent*. Cp. xxvii. 3, *n.*

§ 5. **premi**: sc. *se*. **re frumentaria**: ablative of respect, "in regard to supplies."

§ 6. **quid esse**: the infinitive is used in questions in oratio obliqua when the question in oratio recta is in the third person indicative.

levius: "more contemptible." *Levis*, from its meaning of "light," "without weight," derives a secondary meaning of "valueless," "fickle," "reprehensible."

auctore hoste: "on the advice of a foe," ablative absolute ("with a foe as adviser"). So *auctor legis* means the adviser or supporter, rather than the originator, of a law.

Ch. 29. § 1. **sero**: "too late" (= *serius*). The subject of *facturos* is omitted; it is *eos* (*i.e. milites* or *Romanos*). The oratio obliqua continues throughout the chapter.

aliquid calamitatis: "some disaster." See x. 2, *n.*

§ 2. **occasionem**: "opportunity."

arbitrari: the sentence is elliptical for *se arbitrari Caesarem profectum esse* ("I consider that Caesar has set out"). In the same way *se* is to be supplied as subject to *spectare*, § 3.

interficiundi: older form of the gerund and gerundive of the third and fourth conjugations, remaining regularly in *eundum*, etc. (*eo, ire*); in the antiquated language of laws and formulae (*e.g. res repetundae*); in Plautus, Terence, and Sallust; and not seldom in Cicero, Caesar, and Livy (*e.g.* in *ferundus, gerundus*, and after *i* of the stem).

neque . . ., si ille adesset, . . . venturos esse: "and, if he were there, they would not be coming . . ." (oratio recta, *neque, si ille adesset, . . . venirent*). A conditional sentence with *imperfect* subjunctive in the apodosis is very rarely put (as here) into oratio obliqua, this oblique form usually representing a *present* subjunctive.

nostri: objective genitive.

§ 3. **dolori**: predicative dative. It is qualified only by an adjective of quantity, like *magnus, tantus*.

§ 4. **nostras**: *nos, nostri* are retained in oratio obliqua when they refer to the Romans.

§ 5. **persuaderet**: in oratio recta we should have the present *persuadeat*, the subjunctive being potential. Questions which are in the subjunctive in oratio recta retain the subjunctive in oratio obliqua.

sine certa re: "without definite grounds to go upon."

§ 6. **si . . . durius**: "if nothing untoward occurred." The sentences become in oratio recta, *si nihil erit durius . . . perveniemus; si Gallia omnis cum Germanis consentit, una est in celeritate posita salus.*

Ch. 30. § 1. **primisque ordinibus**: here put shortly for *centurionibus primorum ordinum*; the full phrase occurs in xxviii. 3.

vincite: *vinco* is often used in the sense of "prevailing in an argument," "having one's own way," like *νικᾶν*.

§ 2. **is . . . qui terrear**: "the kind of man to be frightened"; consecutive subjunctive.

acciderit: regular future-perfect of the protasis in a supposition referring to future time.

rationem reposcent: "demand a settlement." The metaphor is from book-keeping, in which *ratio* is the "account"; *rationem reposcere*, "to demand a statement of accounts."

§ 3. **sustineant . . . intereant**: hypothetical subjunctives, relating to a condition (*si . . . liceat*) that may yet be realised.

Ch. 31. § 1. **consurgitur ex consilio**: "the council broke up." Similarly *ventum est ad Vestae* = "Vesta's temple was reached"; and in general a Latin impersonal passive may be rendered into English as a *personal* passive, its subject being taken from some word dependent upon it. The subject to *comprehendunt* is "the members of the council."

ne sua dissensione . . . deducant: *suus* in a final clause normally refers to the subject of the principal sentence, but occasionally, as here, to the subject of the dependent clause.

§ 2. **facilem . . . probent**: in oratio recta, *facilis est res, seu manebimus, seu proficiscemur, si modo unum omnes sentimus ac probamus.* Note that *seu . . . seu* introduce alternative suppositions, *utrum . . . an* alternative questions: the English for both is "whether . . . or."

§ 3. **dat . . . manus**: "gives way." The metaphor is from a conquered enemy, who gives his hands to be bound.

superat: cp. *vincite*, xxx. 1. The verb *supero* is used both transitively and intransitively, "to conquer" or "to be a conqueror."

sententia: "vote" or "motion." It was the technical word for an opinion put forward in the senate, the members of which were asked, *Quid censes?* or *Quid sentis?* and replied, *Ita censeo*, or *Haec est mea sententia.*

§ 4. **ituros**: *se. milites*: "notice was given that the troops would march at dawn."

posset . . . cogeretur: the subjunctives are those of indirect question, and depend upon *circumspiceret*, as does also the direct object-accusative *sua.*

instrumento: "stores."

§ 5. **quare**: referring to *omnia*: "every manner of reason was devised to show that (lit. why) there was no remaining." *Periculum* = the dangers attendant on a siege. The sentence *omnia . . . augeatur* can hardly be in place here; probably it should stand after *perducitur* in § 3 above, giving the arguments urged by Sabinus and his supporters.

§ 6. **ut quibus . . . persuasum**: the *ut*, "as," answers to *sic*, and the antecedent to *quibus* is indefinite, "like men who were convinced." *Esset* is consecutive subjunctive.

Ch. 32–37. *The Eburones fall upon the Roman army, and a stubborn fight ensues; Sabinus and Cotta are both killed, and the survivors slay one another.*

Ch. 32. § 1. **posteaquam . . . senserunt**: the perfect is the regular tense after *postquam* or *posteaquam*, the pluperfect being used only when a definite interval is mentioned or when stress is laid on the completion of the action.

vigiliis: "from the wakefulness," "from the fact that the Romans took no rest" (not "from their own sentinels").

bipertito: "at two points," an adverbial ablative absolute. See xvi. § 2, *n.*

a milibus . . . duobus: "two miles away," lit. "distant by two miles," *a* being here an adverb and the ablative that of measure.

§ 2. **novissimos**: "the hindmost." So *novissimum agmen* = "the rear-guard."

nostris: dative of disadvantage, dependent on *iniquissimo*.

Ch. 33. § 1. **providisset**: causal subjunctive after *qui*, "inasmuch as he had made no previous preparations." So *qui cogitasset . . . fuisset*, § 2.

trepidare: this and the following infinitives are historic; see vi. 5, *n.*

haec . . . ipsa: *sc. facere.*

ut eum omnia deficere viderentur: the subjunctive is consecutive, "in such a way that all his faculties were seen to fail him."

§ 2. **imperatoris**: *sc. officia praestabat.*

§ 3. **omnia obire**: "attend to every duty"; as we say, "*meet* every demand."

quoque loco: "in each place." Cp. xxv. 1, *n.*

iusserunt pronuntiare: the subject of the infinitive is "the officers" (*i.e.* tribunes and centurions) understood; that of *iusserunt* is *Cotta et Titurius. Pronuntiare* is here constructed with *ut* and the subjunctive, expressing a dependent *command*; whereas in xxxi. 4 it is used with the infinitive expressing a dependent *statement.*

in orbem consisterent: "halt in square," or more exactly "form a square and halt"; cp. iii. 4, *n. Orbis* signifies a formation such that every side presents a front to the enemy, whether an actual square, solid or hollow, or a circle.

§ 4. **accidit**: *accido* is usually used, as here, of unlucky occurrences, while *contingo* applies to fortunate events. *Evenio* may express good or bad luck indifferently.

§ 5. **nostris militibus**: dative of reference.

§ 6. **vulgo**: "on all sides."

discederent . . . properaret . . . complerentur: consecutive subjunctives. *Haberet* in the sub-dependent clause is subjunctive by assimilation to the others.

quaeque: equivalent to *et quae.*

Ch. 34. § 1. **tota acie**: "along the whole line." The preposition

in may always be omitted with the ablative of place when qualified by *totus*.

illorum esse: in oratio recta, *vestra est praeda atque vobis reservantur quaecumque Romani reliquerunt: proinde omnia in victoria posita existimate.*

§ 2. **†procurrerat**: there is a variant reading *procurreret* (subjunctive of indefinite frequency); but see note on *absisterent*, xvii. 2.

ab ea parte: "on that side;" just as *a fronte* means "in front," *a tergo*, "behind."

§ 4. **levitate . . . exercitatione**: ablatives of cause: "by reason of the lightness," etc.

iis: *i.e.* the Eburones. With *se recipientes* understand *Romanos*.

Ch. 35. § 2. **eam partem**: *i.e.* that part of the square next to the position of the cohort which advanced. A gap was left by their advance, through which the next cohort could be assailed in flank.

ab latere aperto: "on the exposed side." See note on xxxiv. 2, *ab ea parte*.

§ 3. **qui proximi steterant**: those of the Germans who stood right and left of the charging cohort, and now took it in flank on its retreat to the *orbis*.

§ 4. **sin . . . vellent**: "on the other hand, if they chose to stand their ground," *i.e.* in the square.

§ 5. **ad horam octavam**: among the Romans the time from sunrise to sunset was divided into twelve equal portions, termed *horae*. It being now late autumn, the eighth hour was between 1 and 2 p.m.

pugnaretur: subjunctive after *cum* concessive or causal.

quod . . . esset indignum: consecutive subjunctive: "of such a nature as to be unworthy."

§ 6. **Balventio**: this dative, which may be rendered by the English possessive case, differs from a possessive genitive only in this, that it is constructed as "dative of advantage or disadvantage" with *traiicitur*, whereas the genitive would take the place of an attribute to *femur*. Cp. the French, *Il lui ont blessé la jambe*.

primum pilum duxerat: "had been a centurion of the first rank." See Introd. § 7. *Pilus* here means "a maniple of *pilani*."

tragula (from *traho*): a kind of javelin furnished with a thong (*amentum*, xlviii. 5, *n.*), by which it was swung when thrown.

§ 7. **eiusdem ordinis**: "of the same rank," *i.e. primipilaris*, genitive of quality. From meaning rank in general, *ordo* came to mean specially (1) the senatorial families or the senate; (2) the equestrian grade or guild; (3) a line in the legions.

§ 8. **in adversum os**: "full in the face." The use of the accusative with *in* is like that in xxxiii. 3: "by a sling-bullet which came full into his face." For these bullets cp. xliii. 1, *n.*

Ch. 36. § 1. **Gnaeum Pompeium**: probably a Gaul who had been enfranchised, and thereupon, as usual, took the *praenomen* and *nomen* of his *patronus*, Gnaeus Pompeius, the famous "Pompey the Great."

rogatum: supine; cp. xxvi. 2, *n.*

§ 2. **si velit**: in oratio recta, *si vis mecum colloqui, licet; spero a multitudine impetrari posse quod ad militum salutem pertinet. Tibi vero nihil nocebitur, inque hanc rem meam fidem interpono.* For the tense of *posse* see xxvi. 4, last note; for *fidem interponere* see vi. 6, *n.*

§ 3. **ille**: Titurius. The mood of *rideatur* is that of a dependent verb in oratio obliqua. Before *ut excedant* must be supplied a verb of "saying" or "suggesting," from *communicat*: "suggesting that, if he approved, they should leave the fight."

sperare: supply *se* as subject.

sua: *i.e.* of the speaker and Cotta.

Ch. 37. § 1. **in praesentia**: "at the time." The form is variously explained as ablative of *praesentia*, or as neuter plural of *praesens* agreeing with *tempora* understood.

§ 2. **agunt**: "discuss," "negotiate."

consulto: see on xvi. 2.

§ 3. **victoriam conclamant**: "raised the shout of victory." *Ululatus* is the Gallic war-cry.

§ 4. **ibi**: of time, "then."

§ 5. **aquilifer**: "standard-bearer"; the legionary standard was a silver eagle.

§ 6. **illi**: the Romans.

ad unum: "to a man."

§ 7. **Titum Labienum**: this legate was stationed some eighty miles away, on the borders of the Treveri (see Map).

Ch. 38–44. *The Nervii besiege the camp of Cicero, who refuses to depart under a safe-conduct. Two centurions distinguish themselves by their bravery.*

[See the Index for **Nervii.**]

Ch. 38. § 1. **noctem . . . diem**: direct objects of *intermittit*, "allows to elapse," not acc. of duration of time.

§ 2. **sui liberandi**: "of freeing themselves." The gerundive is in the singular, because *sui*, though used as gen. plur. of *se*, is in form the gen. sing. neut. of *suus.*

ne . . . interfici: in oratio recta, *Nolite vestri in perpetuum liberandi atque ulciscendi Romanos pro iis, quas accepistis, iniuriis occasionem dimittere: interfecti sunt legati duo magnaque pars exercitus interiit; nihil est negotii, subito oppressam legionem, quae cum Cicerone hiemat, interfici.*

§ 4. **nihil esse negotii**: lit. "for the legion which was wintering with Cicero to be cut off if suddenly surprised was no difficult business." *Negotii* is partitive genitive.

Ch. 39. § 1. **cogunt**: "collected." The subject is *Nervii.*

de improviso: see on xxii. 1. Cicero is supposed to have had his

cantonments at Aduatuca (*Tongres*), a few miles north of Liège. Others place the position at Namur, Charleroi, or Wavre, farther to the west. All agree that it was near the line of the Sambre and Maas. See Map.

§ 2. **discessissent**: perhaps causal subjunctive after *qui*; lit. "seeing that they had gone away into the forest"; but the mood may be due simply to assimilation to the subjunctive (*intercíperentur*) of the clause on which the relative clause depends.

munitionis . . . causa: *i.e.* to find earth, stones, wood, and reeds for completing the *munitiones*. *Lignationis* refers to firewood.

§ 3. **magna manu**: for the omission of *cum* see on ix. 3, *n.* 1.

socii et clientes: the former are tribes in equal alliance, the latter, smaller tribes reduced to nominal dependence.

§ 4. **adepti**: the participle is equivalent to the protasis of a conditional sentence—*si hanc victoriam adepti erimus* (oblique form, *si adepti essent*), *in perpetuum erimus victores.*

Ch. 40. § 1. **pertulissent**: the subject is "those who carried the letter," to be supplied from the sense. The pluperfect subjunctive in the oblique form represents the future-perfect indicative of the direct form, Cicero's actual words to the messengers being *magna vobis dabo praemia, si pertuleritis.*

§ 2. **turres**: low, covered towers, standing at intervals along the *vallum*, and commanding the whole length of the actual rampart and fosse. They were little more than scaffolds of timber, sometimes with two or three stories, boarded in on the top and on the side towards the enemy, and protected from fire by raw skins.

§ 3. **coactis**: as in xxxix. 1.

complent: the ordinary way to take an entrenchment was to bridge the fosse by filling it with earth, etc. (*agger*), until the assailants could scale the *vallum*.

§ 6. **quaecumque . . . opus sunt**: *opus* is here a secondary predicate, and may be rendered by an English participle such as "wanted."

praeustae: hardened at the end by burning, so as to serve for spears.

muralium pilorum: "siege-pikes," much longer and heavier than the ordinary *pilum* of the legionary.

contabulantur: "are boarded over" (on the top), or perhaps "are furnished with stories." *Tabula* is technical for "a floor"; the *turres* were so built as to allow of men standing upon the roof and on the different stories, and discharging their missiles thence, protected by the battlements (*pinnae*) and breastworks (*loricae*). Owing to lack of wood, the latter had to be made of wickerwork.

§ 7. **cum . . . esset**: a concessive clause, whence the mood of *esset*. The *ut* which follows is consecutive. For *ultro* see xxviii. 4, *n.*

Ch. 41. § 1. **aditum**: from its first meaning, "an approach," the word derives a second, "leave of approach," and so "permission."

§ 2. **potestate**: equivalent to *facultate*, "opportunity."

egerat: "had discussed," "had urged." *Agere* has this meaning in many phrases; *e.g. agere in senatu; cum tribunis aliquid agere.*

§ 3. **de Sabini morte**: "particulars about the death of Sabinus."

§ 4. **faciundae**: see, for the form, xxix. 2, *n.*

§ 5. **ab his**: *i.e. Caesare reliquisque.* In oratio recta *diffidant* would probably remain unaltered, the clause being causal: "seeing that they feel no confidence."

hiberna recusent: "object to the burden of winter cantonments." Cp. xxvii. 11. The grievance was doubtless real; but here it is used only to draw the Romans out of their camp.

§ 6. **per se**: "as far as depended on them."

In oratio recta, *Erratis, si quicquam ab his praesidii speratis, qui suis rebus diffidant; nos tamen hoc sumus in Ciceronem populumque Romanum animo, ut nihil nisi hiberna recusemus atque hanc inveterascere consuetudinem, nolimus; licet vobis incolumibus per nos ex hibernis discedere et, quascumque in partes vultis* (or *voletis*), *sine metu proficisci.*

§ 8. In oratio recta, *Si ab armis discedere vultis, me adiutore utimini legatosque ad Caesarem mittite. Spero pro eius iustitia vos quae petieritis impetraturos.*

Ch. 42. § 1. **pedum ix**: that is, nine feet in height; whereas the *fossa* was fifteen feet *wide*. The genitives are those of quality or description.

§ 2. **quos . . . captivos, ab his**: equivalent to *a captivis quos.*

§ 3. **nulla . . . copia**: ablative absolute, "there being no such supply of tools as was suitable for this work." The mood of *esset* is due to the consecutive force of the clause.

exhaurire: "to dig up;" the word belongs logically only to *manibus*, though it is coupled also with *sagulis* by the figure called zeugma (*i.e.* Gk. "yoking"). Translate, "to dig up soil with their hands, and *carry it away* in their cloaks." † For *nitebantur* there is a variant reading *cogebantur.*

§ 4. **minus horis tribus**: ablative of "time within which"; "in three hours and less," *i.e.* "in less than three hours." *Minus* is used adverbially like *amplius*, viii. 6, *n.*

milium . . . xv: genitive of description, dependent on *munitionem.*

†pedum: a conjecture in place of the common reading, *passuum*, which is clearly wrong. The circumference of a legionary camp was only 4,200 feet, and to make a ring wall of fifteen miles round it would leave a space of two miles and more between the *vallum* and the circumvallation, an absurd distance.

§ 5. **valli**: *i.e.* the Roman earth-works. The besiegers' towers were intended to overtop the *vallum* of the besieged, and so render it untenable by the defenders.

falces testudinesque: the *falx* was a hook of iron affixed to a long pole and used for tearing down a *vallum.* The *testudines* here are penthouses of wood and wickerwork protected by hides, pushed

forward to the enemy's wall to enable men to undermine and breach it without exposing themselves to attack. It must be distinguished from the *testudo* of ix. 6.

Ch. 43. § 1. **ferventes . . . iacula**: "red-hot bullets of softened clay, and heated javelins." The ancients believed that a sling-bullet was heated to melting-point in its passage through the air, whence *fervidus, liquidus*, are stock epithets of *glans*, the acorn-shaped bullet. In this case, however, the bullets were actually heated in fire before being discharged, and for the purpose were made of soft (*fusilis*, from *fundo*) clay, which retains heat for a considerable time. *Fundis* is ablative of the instrument with *iacere*.

casas: the huts of the soldiery. See first note on xxviii. 4.

§ 3. **explorata**: "assured," lit. "ascertained."

agere: the besiegers' towers were movable and ran on wheels.

§ 4. **cum torrerentur**: concessive. So *premerentur* and *intellegerent*.

quisquam: this pronoun is admissible only in sentences which are negative or quasi-negative, *e.g.* after *vix* and comparatives.

§ 5. **ut . . . constipaverant**: "as they had packed themselves at the very foot of the rampart." *Ut* with the indicative is occasionally used in a causal sense, exactly like the English "as."

§ 6. **si introire vellent**: the apodosis is merged in *vocare*. In oratio recta the call was *introite, si vultis*.

Ch. 44. § 1. **appropinquarent**: consecutive subj. (*qui = tales ut ii*): "such that they were now almost of the first rank," *i.e.* rapidly attaining their promotion to the highest centurionate. See Introd. § 7.

§ 2. **quinam**: equivalent to *uter*: "which of the two should be first."

anteferretur: the direct question would be in the deliberative subjunctive: *quisnam anteferatur?*

summis: to be taken with *simultatibus*.

§ 4. **irrumpit**: *sc. in eam partem*, antecedent to the *quae* clause.

§ 6. **quo . . . hunc**: for the briefer and more usual *quem percussum et exanimatum*. Cp. *principibus . . . hos*, iv. 3, *n.*

§ 7. **Pulioni**: cp. *Balventio*, xxxv. 6; and *conanti*, § 8.

§ 8. **vaginam**: the scabbard hung from the *balteus* on the *right* hip, and the blow of the *verutum* had turned the *balteus* partly round, so that the sword hung out of reach, behind the back.

§ 12. **rursus**: "again," *i.e.* "in his turn."

§ 13. **sic . . . esset**: "Fortune so directed the action of each (lit. so turned each about) that each was the other's succour and safety while he was his enemy." The datives *auxilio, saluti*, are predicative.

Ch. 45–52. *News of the siege is conveyed to Caesar, who thereupon marches with two legions to the relief of Cicero. The Nervii abandon the siege, and are defeated by Caesar.*

[See the Index for Atrebates, Treveri.]

Ch. 45. § 1. **quanto . . . tanto**: ablatives of the measure of difference.

in dies: always used with an idea of increase or decrease, whereas *cottidie* (*quotidie*) is simply "daily."

res . . . pervenerat: literally, "the matter had arrived at a scantiness of defenders"; *i.e.*, "it resulted that very few defenders remained."

litterae: here a true plural (=*epistulae*), "despatches." Commonly *littera* = "a letter of the alphabet"; *litterae* = (1) the letters of the alphabet; (2) *a* despatch (*epistula*), as in § 3 below; (3) literature.

§ 2. **unus . . . Nervius**: "a single Nervian."

intus: *i.e.* within the entrenchments.

loco natus honesto: *i.e.* he was one of the class of knights.

§ 4. **in iaculo illigatas**: "enclosed in a javelin," the shaft of which had been hollowed out.

versatus: "mixing." So *in rebus publicis versari* = "to mix in politics," "to be a statesman."

Ch. 46. § 1. **hora . . . undecima**: about 5 p.m. See note on XXXV. 5.

in Bellovacos: the *hiberna* of Crassus were at Montdidier, while Caesar was at Samarobriva (*Amiens*). See Map.

§ 3. **alterum**: *sc. nuntium*. Fabius was amongst the Morini, near Boulogne.

qua . . . faciendum: the legion of Fabius was to unite with Caesar's column on the march towards Cicero's camp. There are variant readings (1) *scit* (for *sit*); (2) *qua sibi iter faciendum sciebat*, the subject being of course *Caesar* in either case.

§ 4. **scribit Labieno**: cp. xi. 4, *n.* He was quartered on the borders of the country of the disaffected Treveri (near *Trèves*). See Map.

commodo: ablative of manner.

veniat: jussive subjunctive in semi-dependence on *scribit*, the command being, in oratio recta, *Si poteris, veni*. The present tense might of course be changed into the imperfect *veniret*, since *scribit* is a historic present. *Posset* is actually imperfect.

Ch. 47. § 1. **tertia**: about 9 a.m. Crassus was to take command at Amiens during Caesar's absence.

§ 2. **litteras publicas**: public documents, such as despatches, reports, and the accounts of the expenses of his administration. In a settled province the governor was compelled to leave duplicate copies of such accounts in two appointed towns.

§ 3. **non ita multum**: "not so very long," *i.e.* "a very little while," "making very fair speed." The figure by which a negative is used to convey an opposite sense is called litōtes (Gk. "plainness, freedom from ornament"), or meiosis (Gk. "lessening"), it being a less ostentatious way of expressing the fact.

§ 4. **cognita**: note the participle in agreement with the *nearer* of the two nouns.

fugae similem: the uses of *similis* and *dissimilis* are summed up by Roby as follows: "(1) when the object is animate the genitive is preferred; (2) when the object is inanimate the dative is more usual; (3) the personal and reflexive pronouns are always in the genitive." These are the Ciceronian usages; by Livy and later writers either case is used indifferently.

veritus, ne . . . non posset: this is equivalent to *veritus ut posset*, "fearing that he could not."

§ 5. **quanto . . . esset**: some such verb as *docet* must be supplied from *litteras remittit*.

peditatus equitatusque: genitives of definition.

tria milia passuum . . . consedisse: the accusative of extent is often used loosely to express the "distance at which" an event takes place.

Ch. 48. § 1. **etsi . . . redierat**: "although, cast down from his hope of three legions, he had come down to two only." *Opinione* is ablative of separation, and *legionum* is objective genitive. Now that Labienus was unable to join him, Caesar had only the legion which had been with Trebonius at Samarobriva, and that of Fabius.

§ 2. **magnis itineribus**: "by forced marches." Fifteen to twenty miles is a hard day's march for a modern army, from twelve to fifteen being the ordinary distance.

§ 4. **Graecis . . . litteris**: "in Greek characters": the language may have been either Greek or Latin.

§ 5. **possit, monet**: the subject of the first, and object of the second verb, is the Gallic horseman who conveyed the message. Caesar's actual words were, *Si adire non poteris, tragulam . . . abice*. The *amentum* was a thong of leather attached to the shaft of a javelin, and used to give greater purchase to the hand in throwing it.

§ 7. **periculum**: he was afraid that, mistaken for an enemy, he would be shot down by the Romans in Cicero's camp.

§ 8. **biduo**: "till two days were past." The ablative here denotes time "within which."

§ 9. **perlectam**: *sc. epistulam*.

fumi: plural, because each of many fires produced its own column of smoke.

Ch. 49. § 1. **armata**: that is, there were 60,000 fighting men, besides camp-followers and others.

§ 2. **supra**: xlv. 2.

deferat: final subjunctive after *qui*.

admonet . . . faciat: for the construction cp *veniat*, xlvi. 4, *n.*

§ 3. **convertisse**: the verb is transitive, and *multitudinem* is the object.

§ 4. **animo**: ablative of respect.

§ 5. **movet castra**: "breaks up his camp," technical term. The word *castra* is occasionally omitted.

§ 6. **magni periculi res**: genitive of quality or description, "a very dangerous thing."

†tantulis copiis: "his forces being so small." He had but some 7,000 men to oppose to 60,000. There is a variant reading *cum tantis copiis*, which refers of course to the numbers of the Gauls.

tum: "and besides." Cp. its use in *cum . . . tum*, "both . . . and."

obsidione: ablative of separation, as usual with *libero*.

remittendum: equivalent to *remitti posse*. See xxviii. 1, *n*.

§ 7. **haec**: *sc. castra*, to which the genitive *septem milium* stands as attributive genitive (of quality), and the whole is object to *contrahit*. A full legionary camp was 4,200 feet in circumference, but this allowed of *viae* (see note on xv. 3) of 100 and 50 feet in width. By narrowing these passages (*angustiis viarum*) the whole area would be much reduced; and the absence of baggage, together with the small numbers of the cavalry (400), helped the design.

angustiis viarum: *i.e.* "by making the avenues narrow"; for *viae* see xv. 3, *n*.

§ 8. **†valles transiri**: this is a conjectural emendation of *valles transire*, the reading of the best MSS. Some inferior MSS. have *vallem transire*. *Valles* is, of course, nom. sing.

Ch. 50. § 1. **ad aquam**: near the river (xlix. 5), whither both parties went to get water (*aquatio*).

utrique: dual words (*i.e.* words like *uter*, which refer to two only) are used in the plural only (1) when qualifying nouns which have no singular, or none in the same sense as the plural, *e.g. castra;* (2) when referring to two parties of many individuals each, or, as here, to a party (*Galli*) and an individual (*Caesar*).

§ 3. **si forte . . . posset**: this clause qualifies *ut contenderet*: "to fight . . . if he had the chance." (The more usual sense of *si forte* is "to see if.") In the same way *si id efficere non posset* qualifies *transiret*.

pro castris: "in front of the camp."

§ 5. **obstrui**: he ordered the various *portae* (see note, xv. 3) to be filled up with turf-walls of light construction, as if the Romans had no intention of sallying out. See li. 4.

Ch. 51. § 1. **de vallo deductis**: *i.e.* not allowed to appear on the rampart of the camp.

§ 2. **seu quis . . . potestatem**: in oratio recta the proclamation ran, *Seu quis Gallus seu Romanus vult ante horam tertiam ad nos transire, licet sine periculo; post id tempus non erit potestas.* The word *potestas* here = *facultas*, "opportunity." For the use of *quis* see lvii. 1, *n*.

§ 3. **in speciem**: "to all appearance" or "in pretence." The words qualify *obstructis*.

singulis ordinibus caespitum: "with sods, though only one deep in each row."

eā: adverb, "by that way."

§ 4. **resisteret**: the word has here the sense of mere *stopping*, not of active *resistance*.

armis: ablative of separation.

Ch. 52. § 1. **neque etiam . . . videbat**: "and he saw that there was no opportunity left even for small damage to (be inflicted on) them."

detrimento: dative of the work contemplated, dependent on *locum*. **illorum**: objective genitive, dependent on *detrimento*.

§ 2. **turres**: cp. xl. 2, *n.*; xliii. 3, *n.* **testudines**: cp. xlii. 5, *n.*

decimum quemque: the use of *quisque* in the singular with a superlative adjective is the regular equivalent for the English "all" with a plural superlative; *e.g.* *optimus quisque*, = "all the best men." The same idiom is extended to the ordinal numbers: thus, *decimus quisque*, "every tenth man."

§ 3. **sint administratae**: subjunctive in dependent question.

§ 5. **contione habita**: cp. xxvii. 11, *n.* *Contio* is the technical word for a military assembly before the *tribunal*, xv. 3, *n.*

rem gestam proponit: "describes the doing of the matter," *i.e.* how it was done. The Latin language avoids abstract words, and frequently employs the passive participle as a substitute; *e.g.* *interfectus Caesar*, "the assassination of Caesar"; *ademptus Hector*, "the loss of Hector."

§ 6. **quod detrimentum**: an instance of the transfer of the antecedent to the relative clause, like *quem virum vides, vir est* (for *vir quem vides*). *Hoc* may be either accusative and subject of *ferendum (esse)*, or ablative of cause explained by the following *quod*-clause. *Sit* owes its mood to the oratio obliqua.

virtute eorum: "their (the legionaries') valour." If *sua* had been used it would, of course, have been equivalent to *Caesaris*.

Ch. 53, 54. *In consequence of the widespread disaffection Caesar remains with his army all the winter. The Senones expel the chief whom Caesar had set over them.*

[See the Index for **Remi**, Civitates Aremoricae, Senones, **Aedui**.]

Ch. 53. § 1. **per Remos**: "through (the lands of) the Remi," not "through their agency."

ut, cum: the *ut* belongs to *oreretur* (consecutive subjunctive); *cum* ("though") goes with *abesset* and *pervenisset* (concessive subjunctives).

horam nonam: about 3-4 p.m.

oreretur: *orior* and *potior* borrow alternative forms of the third conjugation in the imperfect subjunctive.

ab Remis: as *fio* does duty for the passive of *facio*, it allows the usual construction of the agent.

§ 3. **trinis**: the distributive numerals, and not the cardinal, are used with words which have no singular, or none in the same sense as the plural; in this usage the form *trini* is preferred to *terni*.

totam hiemem . . . manere: instead of leaving for Cisalpine Gaul and Illyricum to hold the annual *conventus*, i. 5, *n.*

§ 4. **reliqui**: nominative to *caperent*, which is subjunctive of indirect question (*quid consilii capiunt reliqui?*), like *fieret*. It might also be genitive with *consilii*—"what remaining counsel," *i.e.* what plans they should take for the future. In this case *caperent* and *fieret* stand for the deliberative subjunctive of direct question—*quid consilii capiamus? unde fiat?*

§ 5. **quin acciperet**: "without his receiving." *Quin* may be used after any negative sentence in the sense of *ut non* with consecutive subjunctive.

§ 6. **oppugnandi sui**: *sui* refers to *Roscius*, as if for *ab Roscio certior factus est* we had had *Roscius Caesarem certiorem fecit*; but as Roscius is in thought the leading person, there is no possibility of doubt. So *suis*, § 7.

§ 7. **longius milia . . . octo**: *longius* is used like *amplius*, etc., without influencing the case, although *quam* is omitted. See viii. 6, *n.*

adeo: "so rapidly."

Ch. 54. § 1. **alias . . . alias**: "at one time . . . at another." The word is an adverb; cp. *eras, foras.*

§ 2. **in primis firma**: lit. "strong among the first," *i.e.* "one of the strongest."

Cavarinum: the object of *interficere*, as also of *expulerunt.*

§ 3. **dicto audientes**: "obedient"; lit. "listening to orders." *Dicto* is a dative similar to that which follows *obsequio* and *pareo*; and the complete phrase *dicto audiens esse* may take a further dative of the person obeyed.

§ 4. **valuit**: the subject is the clause *esse . . . belli.*

principes inferendi belli: "who would take the lead in making war."

alteros . . . alteros: cp. l. 1, *n.*

belli officiis: "their services in the war." The genitive defines the sphere of action, and may be called a genitive of relation like that in *principes inferendi belli*, above.

fuerit: note the primary sequence, common in consecutive clauses after historic main verbs (here *valuit* and *attulit*).

§ 5. **adeo**: qualifying *mirandum*, "very much to be wondered at." It is possible to take *adeo* with *id*, "this indeed"; but the use of *adeo* to qualify pronouns, numerals, and other adverbs (*e.g. tu, ille, tres, iam*) is a mark of the language of comedy and poetry.

cum . . . tum: "both . . . and . . ."

eius opinionis: partitive genitive depending on *tantum.*

a populo Romano: expressing the agent, as though *imperia perferre* were passive (= *servi facti esse*).

dolebant: the subject is *ei*; the object is the clause *se deperdidisse*, etc.

Ch. 55–58. *Indutiomarus heads the national movement, attacks Labienus' camp, and is defeated and slain.*

[See the Index for Cingetorix.]

Ch. 55. § 1. **quin mitterent**: cp. liii. 5, *n.*

§ 2. **cum . . . dicerent**: the clause is causal, but is analogous to *quod diceret*, vi. 3; for the reason is not contained in *dicerent*, but in *expertos (esse)*. Translate, "because, as they averred, they had already made the experiment twice"; and see note on the passage quoted.

Ariovisti bello . . . transitu: ablatives of "time when." For the facts see Introd. § 5.

§ 4. **publice**: "on behalf of their states," opposed to *privatim*, "on their own behalf."

Ch. 56. § 1. **ultro**: "without waiting to be summoned." See xxviii. 4, *n.*

veniri: impersonal.

facinoris: the expulsion of Cavarinus, liv. 2. *Facinus* (cp. *facio*) means any deed, good or bad; the latter sense is the commoner.

neque . . . defore, si . . . coepisset: oblique form of the conditional sentence *neque mihi . . . deerunt, si coepero.*

§ 2. **hoc**: neuter nominative; sc. *armatum concilium. Quo* (adverb) is equivalent to *ad quod concilium.*

novissimus convenit: "arrives last." Observe the use of *novissimus* as a secondary predicate in lieu of an adverb. For its meaning cp. xxxii. 2, *n. Convēnit* is perfect, that tense being more logically used than the present of the English idiom, since he is not put to death until he *has come.*

§ 3. **supra**: iii. 3.

secutum fidem: cp. xx. 1, *n.*

bona publicat: "confiscates his property," as a traitor.

§ 5. **huc**: *i.e.* to the Senŏnes, Carnutes, etc. Indutiomarus intended (1) to attack Labienus' camp, (2) to march through the country of the Remi, (3) to come to the Senŏnes and Carnutes. See Map.

faciat: in oratio recta we should have *castra oppugnabo prius quam id facio.*

Ch. 57. § 1. **loci natura et manu**: "by nature and art," ablatives of means with *munitissimis.*

ne quam: the indefinite adjectival pronoun *qui, quae* or *qua, quod*, is used only after *si, nisi, ne, neve* or *neu, num*, and in relative clauses.

§ 3. **alias . . alias**: cp. liv. 1, *n.*

plerumque: to be joined with *coniciebant*, "used generally to fling."

Ch. 58. § 1. intromissis: sc. *in castra*.

arcessendos curaverat: *sc. Labienus*. For the construction cp. i. 1, *n.* *Arcesso* is also spelt *accerso*, especially in Sallust.

§ 2. **ex consuetudine**: "according to custom."

verborum: genitive of definition: "verbal insults."

§ 3. **ubi visum est**: "when it seemed good (to the Gauls)." This absolute meaning of *videor* is borrowed from the use of *δοκεῖ* in Greek; *e.g.* *δέδοκται* in public decrees = "it is resolved that," *i.e.* "it has seemed good to the people, council, etc."

sub vesperum: cp. xiii. 3, *n.*

§ 4. **praecipit atque interdicit**: what they *are* to do (*praeceptum*) is explained by *peterent*, etc., what they are *not* to do (*interdictum*) by *neu quis . . . vulneret*, etc.

peterent: cp. xlvi. 4, *n.*

quis quem: indefinite pronouns. The use of the indefinite *quis* (substantival) is subject to the same limitations as that of the corresponding adjectival form *qui*; cp. lvii. 1, *n.* In oratio recta the orders ran, *unum omnes petite Indutiomarum, neu quis quem prius vulneret*, etc. *Viderit* is perfect subjunctive corresponding to the future-perfect indicative of oratio recta.

mora reliquorum: "by the delay caused by (pursuing) the rest." The genitive is that of relation; cp. the Vergilian *reliquiae Danaum*, "the remnant left by the Danai"; and above, liv. 4, *belli officiis*.

§ 5. **occiderint**: subjunctive of reported definition, *i.e.* the relative clause is virtually in oratio obliqua, *proponit* implying *dicit se daturum*.

subsidio: predicative dative.

§ 7. **paulo**: with *quietiorem*, "considerably more quiet." See xix. 1, *n.*

HISTORICAL AND GEOGRAPHICAL INDEX.

A.

Aduatŭci, -orum, m.: a German tribe, said to be the descendants of the Cimbri and Teutŏnes (see Introd. § 2). They lay between the Scheldt (*Scaldis*) and Maas (*Mosa*), north of the Sambre (*Sabis*), and had as their neighbours on the west the Nervii, on the north-east the Eburōnes. The Eburōnes had at one time been their vassals (xxvii. 2). They joined Ambĭōrix in his attack upon the camp of Q. Cicero, 54 B.C. (xxxviii. 2).

Aedui, -orum, m.: the most powerful tribe of Celtica in Caesar's time. They dwelt between the Saône (*Araris*) and Loire (*Liger*), northward of Lyons (*Lugdunum*), and their capital was Bibracte, now *Autun*. They owed their headship to the countenance of Rome, by whom they were at an early date styled *Amici*. They were thus enabled to contend successfully with the Arverni and Sequani. They were worsted, however, by Ariovistus, and thereupon Divitiacus, an Aeduan noble, appealed again to Rome. This was one cause of Caesar's coming to Gaul. Dumnorix (*q.v.*) was brother of Divitiacus. They remained loyal to Rome during the revolts of 54 B.C. and the following year. In 52 B.C., however, they joined in the movement of which Vercingetorix was the head, but were defeated, and treated without much severity by Caesar. The name is also spelt *Haedui*.

Aeduus, -a, -um: Aeduan.

Ambĭōrix, -īgis, m.: chief of the Eburōnes, had been kindly treated by Caesar, who relieved him from paying tribute to the Aduatŭci (xxvii. 2), and restored to him his son and nephew from their position as hostages with that people. Nevertheless he headed a rising of his people, 54 B.C., and cut to pieces the troops under Sabinus and Cotta (xxvi.-xxxvii.); then roused the Aduatŭci and Nervii to attack Q. Cicero. The attempt was foiled by Cicero's bravery and by the arrival of Caesar, but Ambĭōrix escaped from the scene of his defeat (xxxviii.-li.).

Ancālītes, -um, m.: a small tribe of Britons, probably in what is

now Oxfordshire, who made terms with Caesar after the submission of the Trinobantes (xxi. 1).

Appius Claudius Pulcher: consul together with L. Domitius Ahenobarbus, 54 B.C., and brother of the notorious Publius Clodius Pulcher, whose hostility to Cicero he shared. As governor of Cilicia, 53-51 B.C., he showed great cruelty and covetousness. On the outbreak of civil war, 49 B.C., he sided with Pompeius, but died before the battle of Pharsalus.

Arduenna Silva, -ae, f.: the Forest of the Ardennes, covering the highlands between the Maas (*Mosa*) on the one hand, and the angle formed by the Moselle (*Mosella*) and the Rhine (*Rhenus*) on the other. It is the remnant of the forests which once covered the whole of Belgium, Gaul, and Central Europe; and it served as a place of refuge for Indutiomārus and the revolted Trevĕri (iii. 4).

Arĕmoricus, -a, -um: belonging to Aremorica, Armorica. The *Civitates Aremoricae* correspond to the modern Brittany and Normandy, between the Loire (*Liger*) and Seine (*Sequăna*). They were reduced in Caesar's third campaign, 56 B.C., and were preparing to rise against L. Roscius, when the news of the defeat of Ambiŏrix deterred them (iii. 6). The name is also written *Armoricus*.

Ariŏvistus, -i, m.: prince of the Suebi, driven from Gaul by Caesar at the battle of Vesontio (*Besançon*), 58 B.C. (i. 2). See Introd. § 2.

Arpineius, Gaius: a Roman knight, sent by his friend the legate Q. Titurius to confer with Ambiŏrix (xxvii. 1).

Atrĕbas, -ātis, adj.: belonging to the Atrĕbātes (xxii. 3).

Atrĕbātes, -um, m.: (1) a powerful tribe of Belgica lying between the Somme (*Sămăra*) and the Scheldt (*Scaldis*), where is now *Artois*. Their capital was Arras (*Nemĕtocenna*). In 57 B.C. they sent 15,000 warriors against Caesar (xlvi. 3). (2) A British tribe, probably immigrants from Belgica, inhabiting parts of Oxfordshire and Berkshire.

Atrius, -i, m.: Quintus Atrius was left by Caesar in command of his fleet when beached near Deal (ix. 1).

B.

Balventius, T.: a centurion (xxxv. 6).

Belgae, -arum, m.: natives of Belgium, or Belgica.

Belgicus, -a, -um: belonging to Belgium, which is commonly called *Gallia Belgica* (see Introd. § 1).

Belgium, -i, n.: that part of Gallia which lay north of the Seine (*Sequăna*), embracing the Bellŏvăci, Remi, Nervii, Atrĕbātes, Eburōnes, Morini, Menapii, and Aduatŭci (xii. 2; xxv. 4). See further, Introd. § 1.

Bellŏvăci, -orum, m.: a powerful Belgic tribe, situated between the Somme (*Sămăra*), Oise (*Isara*), and Seine (*Sequăna*). Their capital was Bratuspantium (*Montdidier*), where M. Crassus, the quaestor, was cantonned (xxiv. 3).

Bibrŏci, -orum, m.: a British tribe in the neighbourhood of the Trinobantes, who submitted to Caesar (xxi. 1).

Britanni, -orum, m. : natives of Britain, the British.

Britannia, -ae, f.: Britain. In the belief of Caesar, Britain was an island of triangular shape, of which one corner faced the Baltic Sea, a second ran out towards Spain, while the containing sides faced respectively north and west. Its chief tribes were the Trinobantes (*Essex and Middlesex*), the Iceni (*Norfolk and Cambridgeshire*), and the Regni (*Sussex*). There were many Gallic immigrant tribes such as the Atrĕbātes and Belgae. At Caesar's second invasion, the headship of Cassivellaunus, whose kingdom extended over Middlesex and Hertfordshire, was recognised by the neighbouring tribes. But the coalition of the entire island was frustrated by the Trinobantes, who joined Caesar and set the example of secession to many lesser tribes.

Britannicus, -a, -um: belonging to Britain, British.

C.

Caesar, -ăris, m. : Gaius Julius. See Introd. § 3.

Cantium, -i, n. : Kent. It was divided into four petty principalities, which Cassivellaunus roused in Caesar's rear and induced to make a futile attack upon the naval camp (xiii. 1 ; xxii. 1).

Carnūtes, -um, m. : a tribe of central Gaul, dwelling on either bank of the Loire (*Liger*) about their capital Cenābum, now Orléans. Caesar forced upon them as king one Tasgetius, whom they had expelled, and in 54 B.C. they assassinated him and joined the Sĕnŏnes and Treveri in concerting a rising against the Romans (xxv. 4 ; xxix. 2 ; lvi.).

Carvilius, -i, m.: one of the four kings of Kent (xxii. 1).

Cassi, -orum, m. : a British tribe, probably in the neighbourhood of Hertfordshire and Middlesex, surrendered to Caesar (xxi. 1).

Cassivellaunus, -i, m. : was chosen as their general by the majority of the Britons at the time of Caesar's second invasion, 54 B.C. He endeavoured to hold the passage of the Thames ; was beaten back ; then resorted to guerilla warfare until the defection of the Trinobantes led to the storming of his *oppidum*. Thereupon he made terms, which he probably never intended to keep (xi. 8 ; xviii.-xxii.).

Catuvolcus, -i, m. : an Eburonian who joined Ambĭorix in the attack on Sabinus and Cotta (xxiv. 4 ; xxvi. 1). *S.v.* Ambĭorix.

Cavarīnus, -i, m. : hereditary prince of the Sĕnŏnes, was expelled by his people and took refuge with Caesar, in whose ranks he became a soldier (liv. 2).

Cenimagni, -orum, m.: a British tribe. See note, xxi. 1.

Ceutrōnes, -um, m.: a people situated between the Scheldt (*Scaldis*) and the sea, around the town now called *Courtray*. They were dependent on the Nervii, whom they assisted in the attack on Cicero's camp (xxxix. 1).

Cicĕro, -ōnis, m. : Quintus Tullius Cicero, born about 102 B.C., was a few years younger than his brother Marcus, the great orator. The two were educated together by the best teachers of the time both in Rome and at Athens, one of their instructors being Archias, the poet

of Antioch. Both went into politics, and Quintus was praetor 62 B.C., in the year succeeding the consulship of Marcus. He governed Asia as propraetor 61-59 B.C. Marcus was opposed to Pompeius, Caesar, and Crassus, and for this reason Caesar took Quintus with him into Gaul to serve as a sort of hostage for his brother, 55 B.C. He went with Caesar to Britain, 54 B.C.; and beat off the combined attack of the Nervii, Aduatŭci, and Eburōnes, under Ambĭŏrix, 54 B.C. When the civil war began (see Introd. § 3) Quintus and Marcus both sided with Pompeius, and were both pardoned by Caesar. After Caesar's death both were proscribed by Antonius, Octavianus, and Lepidus, and put to death. Quintus was something of an author, though only one treatise by him, *De Petitione Consulatus*, is now extant.

Cingĕtŏrix, -īgis, m.: (*a*) son-in-law of Indutiomārus, prince of the Treveri. He remained loyal to Caesar in face of his father-in-law's intrigues (iii. 3), and finally had his property confiscated as a traitor (lvi. 3). On the death of Indutiomārus, Cingĕtŏrix became king. (*b*) One of the four kings of Kent (xxii. 1).

Commius, -i, m.: an Atrebatian Gaul, whose language enabled him to act as an interpreter between Caesar and Cassivellaunus (xxii. 3).

Cotta, -ae, m.: Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta, joint commander with Sabinus of the fifteen cohorts which were cut to pieces by Ambĭŏrix and Catuvolcus. His prudent advice to meet the attack of the Gauls within the camp, and his foresight and bravery in the final struggle, are described by Caesar in strong contrast with the incapacity of his colleague. He held the rank of *legatus* (xxiv. 5, etc.).

Crassus, -i, m.: Marcus Licinius Crassus, quaestor of Caesar, 54 B.C., was the son of M. Crassus Dives, the colleague of Caesar and Pompeius in the First Triumvirate. He commanded a legion which was wintering at Bratuspantium (*Montdidier*) at the time of the attack on Cicero's camp, and occupied Samarobriva (*Amiens*) during Caesar's absence on the relief-march (xxiv. 3; xlvi., xlvii.).

D.

Domitius Ahenobarbus, L.: one of the consuls for 54 B.C. He was a determined supporter of the Senate, and sided with Pompeius in 49 B.C. He fell at Pharsalus in the following year.

Dumnŏrix, -īgis, m.: a prince of the Aedui. He entered into a secret league with Casticus the Sequanian and Orgetorix the Helvetian, to secure the kingship for himself. He resisted Caesar and owed his life to the intercession of his brother Divitiacus the Druid, who sided with the Romans. Still continuing to plot, he was ordered to join the Second British Expedition; and on his attempting to escape by flight was cut down by Caesar's orders (vi., vii.).

E.

Eburōnes, -um, m.: a semi-Germanic tribe lying between the Maas (*Mosa*) and Rhine (*Rhenus*) to the north of the Ardennes. In 54 B.C. they rose under Ambĭŏrix and Catuvolcus, and massacred

Sabinus and Cotta with a legion and a half of troops. In reprisal Caesar extirpated them (xxvi.-xxxvii.).

Esŭbii, -orum, m. : also called Essui, Essuvii, Sesuvii (xxiv. 2). A small tribe of Lower Normandy, near *Essey* (département *Orne*), amongst whom was quartered L. Roscius with one legion, 54 B.C.

F.

Fabius, -i, m. : Gaius Fabius Maximus, a *legatus*, quartered for the winter of 54 B.C. amongst the Morini, whence he was suddenly recalled to relieve Cicero. He joined Caesar on the march. He remained with Caesar up to the close of the Gallic War (xxiv. 2; xlvi. 3; **xlvii.**; liii.).

G.

Gallia, -ae, f.: Gaul. For the meaning of the term and its various divisions (*Gallia Braccata, Comata, Cisalpina, Narbonensis* or *Provincia*) see Introd. § 1.

Galli, -orum, m. : the Gaul's.

Gallicus, -a, -um : Gallic.

Gallus, -a, -um : Gallic.

Geidumni, -orum, m. : a tribe of Belgic Gaul, dependent on the Nervii. Their exact position is not known.

Germania, -ae, f. : the general name for all Central Europe within the Rhine, Alps, and Danube. After the organisation of Gaul under the Emperors, two provinces on the *western* bank of the Rhine were created and called by this name, viz. : (1) *Germania Superior, i.e.* the frontier of the Upper Rhine and Switzerland; (2) *Germania Inferior, i.e.* the frontier of the Lower Rhine, including the Netherlands.

Germāni, -orum, m. : the Germans, inhabitants of Germania (xxvii.; xxviii.; xxix.; lv.). Large numbers of these peoples had crossed the Rhine at various times; *e.g.* the Cimbri and Teutŏnes, whose descendants were the Aduatŭci (Introd. § 2); the Suebi under Ariovistus (Introd. § 4); the Eburōnes, Usipētes, Tencteri, etc. Such as made good their settlement on the Gallic shore were known as *Germani Cisrhenani;* those who remained on the other bank were called for distinctiveness *Transrhenani* (ii. 4). The Gauls frequently invited them to their help against other foes, such as the Romans (xxvii. 8). Caesar twice crossed the Rhine to chastise the *Transrhenani*, 55, 53 B.C.

Germanicus, -a, -um : German.

Grudii, -orum, m. : subject to the Nervii (xxxix. 1). Their locality is not ascertained.

H.

Haedui : *s.v.* Aedui.

Hibernia, -ae, f. : Ireland, only known to Caesar by hearsay as a large island off the western coast of Britannia (xiii. 2).

Hispania, -ae, f.: Spain, including Portugal. Its north-western promontory was believed to be immediately opposite the Land's End (xiii. 2). It was divided for purposes of administration into the two provinces of *Hispania Citerior* or *Tarraconensis*, including all the north-eastern and northern portions and *Hispania Ulterior* or *Baetica*, embracing the portions about the Baetis (*Guadalquiver*) and Lusitania (*Portugal*). It supplied Caesar with rigging for his British fleet (*i.e.* ropes of esparto grass), and with cavalry (i. 4 ; xxvi. 3).

Hispānus, -a, -um : Spanish.

I.

Illyricum, -i, n. : also called Illyria. The ill-defined province extending along the eastern shore of the Adriatic Gulf from Cisalpine Gaul to Macedonia, and reaching inland to the Moesi and Thracians. More especially the northern portion of this district was known as Illyricum, while the southern was called Dalmatia, or, in the extreme south, Epirus. It was given to Caesar, together with Cisalpine Gaul, as his *provincia* by the *Lex Vatinia* of 59 B.C. It gave him little trouble, but he usually visited it each winter to hold his *conventus* (i. 5-9).

Imanuentius, -i, m. : father of Mandubracius (*q.v.*) and king of the Trinobantes, killed by Cassivellaunus. The son was compelled to fly to Caesar in Gaul, and the Trinobantes gave themselves up to Caesar, and asked for the restoration of Mandubracius (xx.). The exact form of the name Imanuentius is doubtful.

Indutiomārus, -i, m.: chief of the Treveri, induced the revolt of the Eburonians Ambĭōrix and Catuvolcus, 54 B.C. He had, earlier in the year, endeavoured to provoke a rising of his own people, but was prevented by his son-in-law Cingetorix, who led a large faction of Romanising nobles (iii. and iv.). After the massacre of Sabinus and Cotta, Indutiomārus attacked the cantonments of Labienus, but was repulsed and himself slain. Cingetorix succeeded to his position (liii-lviii.).

Italia, -ae, f.: the name for the whole peninsula south of the Alps, but in later Republican times used in the special sense of that part which lay south of the rivers Macra and Rubicon. It thus included a few remnants of Gallic tribes in its northern parts, and was conterminous with Gallia Cisalpina.

L.

Labiēnus, -i, m.: Titus Atius Labienus, tribune of the plebs, 63 B.C., supported Caesar's interests so well that he was taken into Gaul as a *legatus*, and served there for the whole of Caesar's campaigns. On the breaking out of the Civil War (see Introd. § 3) he joined Pompeius, but he was the only one of Caesar's officers to do so. He fought against Caesar at Pharsalus, Thapsus, and Munda, and fell in this last battle, 45 B.C. (xxiii.; lvii.; lviii.). To him was due the defeat and

death of Indutiomārus (*q.v.*); and to him was entrusted the care of Gaul during the three months of Caesar's absence in Britain, 54 B.C. (viii.).

Levāci, -orum, m. : a client state of the Nervii (xxxix. 1), situated near the river Lieva, around the town Gandavum (*Ghent*).

Lucanius, -i, m.: a centurion of the highest rank, killed in the fight against Ambiŏrix (xxxv. 7).

Lugotorix, -orīgis, m.: a British chief, captured by the Romans (xxii. 2).

M.

Mandubracius, -i, m.: an exiled prince of the Trinobantes, whose hatred of Cassivellaunus, his father's murderer and the cause of his exile, led to the reduction of Cassivellaunus (xx.). *S.v.* Imanuentius.

Meldi, -orum, m. (also *Meldae, -arum*): a people of Celtic Gaul, between the Marne (*Matrona*) and Seine (*Sequăna*), bordering upon the Bellovaci and Remi. They furnished Caesar with a large fleet for his invasion of Britain (v. 2).

Mŏna, -ae, f.: one of the strongholds of Druidism, now called the Isle of Anglesea (xiii. 3). The position which Caesar assigns to it (xiii. 3) is however better suited to the Isle of Man (*Monapia*).

Morĭni, -orum, m. : a coast tribe of Belgium north of the Atrĕbătes. Their capital was Gessoriăcum, now *Boulogne*. They aided the Venĕti in the naval war of 56 B.C. (Introd. § 5), and were held in check in the winter of 54 B.C. by the presence of the *legatus* Q. Fabius (xxiv.).

Mŏsa, -ae, f.: the Maas (xxiv. 4) or Meuse, rising in the Vosges (*Vosegus Mons*), and traversing the Ardennes (*Arduenna Silva*), falls into the Rhine near its mouth. Its chief tributary is the Sabis (*Sambre*).

N.

Nervii, -orum, m.: a powerful Belgic people about the upper courses of the Scheldt (*Scaldis*) and Sambre (*Sabis*). They comprised five smaller tribes or clans : the Centrones, Grudii, Levaci, Pleumoxii, Geidumni. They suffered a terrible defeat on the Sambre in 57 B.C., but revolted again in 54 B.C. at the call of Ambiŏrix, and attacked the camp of Q. Cicero, who was quartered amongst them (xxxviii., etc.).

P.

Pădus, -i, m.: the Po, the largest river of Italy, rises in the Maritime Alps, and flows eastward into the Adriatic Sea. It formed the boundary between Gallia Cispadana and Gallia Transpadana (xxiv. 4).

Petrosidius, L., -i, m.: bearer of a legionary eagle (xxxvii. 5).

Pirustae, -arum, m.: a small tribe of Illyrians who were guilty of petty forays during the year 55 B.C. (i. 5-9).

Plancus, -i, m.: Lucius Munatius Plancus, a *legatus*, was stationed with a legion amongst the Belgae for the winter of 54 B.C., but was

shortly transferred to the Carnūtes (*q.v.*). He continued a friend of Caesar till the latter's death, at which time (44 B.C.) Plancus was governor of Transalpine Gaul. He soon after sided with the Second Triumvirate. To him was due the foundation of the colony of Lugdunum (*Lyons*), and the title of Augustus conferred upon Octavianus (xxiv.; xxv.).

Pleumoxii, -orum, m.: subject to the Nervii (xxxix. 1).

Pompeius, Cn., -i, m.: xxxvi. 1.

Portus Itius, Portūs Itii, m.: the port from which the invading force sailed for Britain, 54 B.C. It is supposed variously to have been Gesso riacum (*Boulogne*) or *Wissant*. The former is probably the truer view (ii. 3; v. 1). It was in the territories of the Morini.

Pulio, T., -onis, m.: xliv.

R.

Rēmi, -orum, m.: a powerful Belgic tribe between the Treveri and Bellovaci. Their capital was Durocortorum (*Rheims*). Their Romanising policy rendered them hateful to the other Belgic Gauls, and the threat of Indutiomārus to raid their lands prevented Labienus, who was quartered on the frontier, from marching to relieve Q. Cicero. Labienus was himself attacked, and slew Indutiomārus (iii.; xxiv.; liii.-lvi.).

Rhenus, -i, m.: the Rhine, the natural frontier of Gallia on the left, Germania on the right. It rises in central Helvetia, within a few miles of the source of the Rhone (*Rhŏdănus*). Caesar twice crossed it, 55, 53 B.C.

Roscius, -i, m.: Lucius Roscius wintered with one legion amongst the Esubii (xxiv.; liii.).

S.

Sabinus, -i, m.: Q. Titurius Sabinus, a *legatus* of Caesar, and an able officer in previous campaigns, was cowed by the rising of Ambĭŏrix (*q.v.*), entrapped into quitting his camp, and massacred with Cotta and fifteen cohorts, 54 B.C. (xxiv.-xxxvii.).

Samarobrīva, -ae, f. (*lit.* "the bridge of Samara"): Amiens, on the Somme (*Samara*), capital of the Ambiani. It was Caesar's headquarters in Belgica, and the depôt for his baggage, stores, and accounts (xxiv.; xlvii.; liii.).

Segontiăci, -orum, m.: one of the petty British tribes which surrendered to Caesar, following the example of the Trinobantes (xxi. 1).

Segŏvax, m.: one of the four kings of Kent who made an attack on Caesar's naval camp, but was repulsed (xxii. 1).

Sĕnŏnes, -um, m.: a large tribe of Celtic Gaul about the head waters of the Seine (*Sequăna*), whose capital was Agedincum (*Sens*). Their attempt to murder Cavarinus (*q.v.*) made them suspected by Caesar, as well as their being neighbours of the disaffected Carnūtes. In the years 53, 52 B.C. they were active in the final revolt under Vercingetorix (liv.; lvi.).

T.

Tamĕsis, -is, m.: the Thames, the boundary between the *civitates maritimae* and the territories of Cassivellaunus (xi.; xviii.).

Tasgētius, -i, m.: a prince of the Carnūtes restored by Caesar, and afterwards assassinated (xxv.; xxix.). *S.v.* Carnūtes.

Taximagulus, -i, m.: one of the kings of Kent (xxii. 1).

Tenctēri, -orum, m. (also called *Tenchtheri*): a German tribe on the lower Rhine, between the Sugambri and the Usipĕtes, constantly endeavouring to win a footing in Gaul. They were disastrously defeated in such an attempt at the Battle of Coblentz, 55 B.C. (lv. 2). They occupied the modern *Wesel* and *Essen*.

Titurius, -i, m.: *s.v.* Sabinus.

Transrhenani, -orum, m.: *s.v.* Germani.

Trebonius, -i, m.: Gaius Trebonius, a *legatus* of Caesar, commanded one legion amongst the Belgae in the winter of 54 B.C.

Trevĕri, -orum, m.: the most north-easterly people of Celtic Gaul, dwelling on either side of the Moselle (*Mosella*), immediately above its confluence with the Rhine, and bordering upon the Remi to the west. They were largely, if not entirely, of German origin, and have left their name in the modern *Trier* or *Trèves*. They obstinately refused to submit to Roman rule, and their prince Indutiomārus headed the patriotic party, even going so far as to invite the Germans to his aid, but in vain. They joined the revolt of the Eburōnes under Ambĭōrix, and while the latter was attacking Q. Cicero they endeavoured to surprise Labienus. The attempt failed, and Indutiomārus was killed.

Trinobantes, -um, m.: a leading people of Britain, occupying parts of Essex and Suffolk. Their hatred of Cassivellaunus, because of his murder of their king Imanuentius (*q.v.*), induced them to submit to Caesar, and so to cripple the resistance of the patriots to the Romans (xx.-xxii.). Their capital was Camalodunum (*Colchester*), afterwards a Roman colony.

V.

Vertĭco, -onis, m.: a Nervian noble in the camp of Q. Cicero, by whose aid was conveyed to Caesar the news of the attack of Ambĭōrix and his allies (xlv.; xlix.).

Vorēnus, L., -i, m.: xliv

TEST PAPERS ON

CAESAR'S GALLIC WAR, BOOK V.

FIRST SERIES.

TEST PAPER 1. (Ch. i.—xi.)

1. Translate :—(*a*) Ch. ii., § 3, Collaudatis ... reliquit.
(*b*) Ch. viii., §§ 1, 2, His rebus ... conspexit.
(*c*) Ch. xi., §§ 3—5, Itaque ... coniungi.

2. Give the meanings, gender, and all genitives of *transmissum, copias, dies, officium, fabris, religiones, funes, solum ;* and the principal parts of *nanctus, accessum, adempta, gestis.*

3. Write a note upon :—(i.) *Conventibus Galliae Citerioris peractis in Illyricum proficiscitur ;* (ii.) *testudine facta et aggere ad munitiones adiecto ;* (iii.) *civitates maritimae ;* (iv.) *annotinae naves ;* (v.) *actuariae naves ;* (vi.) *litem aestimare.*

TEST PAPER 2. (Ch. xii.—xxiii.)

1. Translate :—(*a*) Ch. xiii., §§ 1, 2, Insula ... Britanniam.
(*b*) Ch. xviii., §§ 3—5, Ripa ... mandarent.
(*c*) Ch. xxiii. §§ 5, 6, Quas ... perduxit.

2. Give the genders and all accusatives of *pecus, lepus, lateris, paludibus, obsidum ;* compare *cupidius, celeriter, consimilis ;* and write down the principal parts of *sero, vivo, alo, appello, colligendi, transiri.*

3. Translate and explain :—(i.) *Eorum habentur liberi, quo primum virgo quaeque deducta est ;* (ii.) *Complures praeterea minores subiectae insulae existimantur ;* (iii.) *tribunus militum ;* (iv.) *ab signis absistere ;* (v.) *prioris commeatus naves ;* (vi.) *taleae ferreae.*

TEST PAPER 3. (Ch. xxiv.—xxxiv.)

1 Translate :—(*a*) Ch. xxvi., §§ 1, 2, Diebus ... venerunt.
(*b*) Ch. xxvii., §§ 7—9, Quibus ... absit.
(*c*) Ch. xxxi., §§ 4—6, Pronuntiatur ... impedimentis.

2. Parse fully :—*peracto, praesto, aliqui, coniciant.* What constructions follow *opus esse, obire?* What is meant by Brachylogy, *Constructio Praegnans,* the Genitive of Definition, the Accusative of Limitation?

3. Translate and explain :—
(i.) *Omnium legionum hiberna . . . milibus passuum centum continebantur.*
(ii.) *Cum a Cotta primisque ordinibus acriter resisteretur.*

4. What is the meaning of *pietas, familiaris, cohors, gratias referre, conducta manus, manus dare, in orbem consistere?*

TEST PAPER 4. (Ch. xxxv.—xlvii.)

1. Translate :—(*a*) Ch. xxxvi., § 3, Ille ... perseverat.
(*b*) Ch. xl., §§ 6, 7, Quaecumque ... cogeretur.
(*c*) Ch. xliv., §§ 7—10, Transfigitur ... occisum.
In (*b*) account for the moods of *esset* and *cogeretur.*

2. Distinguish *ambo* and *uterque; haud* and *non; paulo* and *paulum; defero* and *differo.* Quote from this book an example of the ablative absolute used as (1) temporal; (2) causal; (3) concessive; (4) attendant circumstance; (5) without a noun.

3. Explain:—(i.) *vallum;* (ii.) *fidem facere, fidem sequi, fidem praestare;* (iii.) *ferventes fusili ex argilla glandes;* (iv.) *in adversum os funda vulnerari.*

TEST PAPER 5. (Ch. xlviii.—lviii.)

1. Translate :—(*a*) Ch. xlviii., §§ 5—8, Si adire ... defertur.
(*b*) Ch. liii., §§ 1, 2, Interim ... reducit.
(*c*) Ch. liv., §§ 2, 3, Tamen ... fuerunt.

2. Explain, with a translation :—
(i.) *Castra, etsi erant exigua per se, vix hominum milium septem, praesertim nullis cum impedimentis, tamen angustiis viarum . . . contrahit.*
(ii.) *Obstructis in speciem portis singulis ordinibus caespitum.*
(iii.) *Etsi opinione trium legionum deiectus ad duas redierat.*

3. What is meant by (i.) *bona publicare;* (ii.) *voluntarii;* (iii.) *post horam nonam diei;* (iv.) *de tertia vigilia?*
Distinguish *sub brumam* and *sub bruma;* and state the rules for the use of *quis* (*qua, quid*), and *quisquam.*

4. Parse *alterae, nutu, caespite, confertissima, obsessis.* Mark the accent and the quantity of *loricae, recusent, abicere, Ambiorige.*

SECOND SERIES.

TEST PAPER 6. (Ch. i.—xi.)

1. Translate :—(*a*) Ch. i., §§ 2—4, Ad celeritatem ... iubet.
(*b*) Ch. ix., § 1, Caesar ... praefecit.

2. Comment upon the syntax of the following sentences :—
(i.) Contendit ut in Gallia relinqueretur, partim quod insuetus navigandi mare timeret, partim quod religionibus impediri sese diceret.
(ii.) Reliquos obsidum loco secum ducere decreverat, quod, cum ipse abesset, motum Galliae verebatur.
(iii.) Labieno scribit, ut, quam plurimas posset, iis legionibus, quae sunt apud eum, naves instituat.
(iv.) Postridie eius diei.

3. What are the constructions of *impero* and *vereor?* What are the meanings in composition of the prefixes *cum*, *per*, *se?*

TEST PAPER 7. (Ch. xii.—xxiii.)

1. Translate :—(*a*) Ch. xii, §§ 3—6, Hominum ... causa.
(*b*) Ch. xix, § 3, Relinquebatur ... poterant.

2. Write a note on the italicised words in *four* of the following excerpts :—
(i.) Quid *vectigalis* Britannia *penderet*, constituit.
(ii.) Omnes fere iis nominibus civitatum appellantur, *quibus* orti ex civitatibus eo pervenerunt.
(iii.) *Carne* vivunt.
(iv.) In *statione* collocari.
(v.) Repente advolaverunt (hostes), sic uti ab signis legionibus non *absisterent.*
If *sicubi* be read here, explain the mood of *absisterent.*
(vi.) Accidit ut nulla omnino navis, quae milites *portaret*, desideraretur.

3. What do you know of Portus Itius, Labienus, Mandubracius, Dumnorix?

4. Draw a map of Britain according to Caesar's view, marking the position of Trinobantes, Cantium, *Oppidum Cassivellauni.*

Or,

5. Draw a map of Gallia Belgica, marking the positions of the Bellovaci, Remi, Eburones, Nervii, Morini, Atrebates, Treveri; the Sequana, Mosa, Matrona; Samarobriva; and the winter quarters of Sabinus, Q. Cicero, T. Labienus, Crassus, and Plancus.

TEST PAPER 8. (Ch. xxiv.—xxxiv.)

1. Translate :—(*a*) Ch. xxvii., §§ 2, 3, Sese ... multitudinem.
(*b*) Ch. xxix., §§ 3, 4, Non hostem auctorem ... exstincta.

2. Convert extract (*a*) as far as *tenuissent* into Oratia Recta.

3. Discuss the syntax of the italicised words in the subjoined extracts :—
(i.) Postremo quid *esse* levius?
(ii.) Titurius, qui nihil ante *providisset, trepidare.*
(iii.) *Cotidiana exercitatione nihil* iis *noceri* posse (dicit).
(iv.) *Diebus* circiter quindecim, *quibus* in hiberna ventum est.

4. What do you know of Q. Cicero, M. Crassus, and Ambiorix?

TEST PAPER 9. (Ch. xxxv.—xlvii.)

1. Translate :—(*a*) Ch. xliii., §§ 1—3, Septimo ... coeperunt.
(*b*) Ch. xliv., §§ 2, 3, Hi ... iudicabit.
Convert the speech of Pulio in (*b*) into Oratio Obliqua.

2. What is the meaning of *turres contabulare, falces, loricae, sudes, litterae in iaculo illigatae?*

3. Comment upon the syntax of the words italicised in *three* of the following extracts :—
(i.) Scribit Labieno, cum legione ad fines Nerviorum *veniat.*
(ii.) *Minus horis tribus milium pedum* quindecim in circuitu munitionem perfecerunt.
(iii.) Hostes, *si introire vellent,* vocare coeperunt.
(iv.) Docet omnes *peditatus equitatusque* copias *tria milia passuum longe ab* suis castris consedisse.
(v.) Hortatur ne *sui* in perpetuum liberandi atque ulciscendi *Romanos* pro iis, quas *acceperint,* iniuriis occasionem *dimittant.*

4. Briefly describe a Roman *castra.*

TEST PAPER 10. (Ch. xlviii.—lviii.)

1. Translate :—(*a*) Ch. liv., § 4, Tantum ... nobis.
(*b*) Ch. lviii., §§ 4, 5, Praecipit ... subsidio.

2. Remark on the syntax of the subjoined :—
(i.) A populo Romano imperia perferre.
(ii.) Trinis hibernis.
(iii.) Praecipuo semper honore Remos habuit.

3. How was a Roman legion armed, organised, and commanded at the time of Caesar?

4. What events led to Caesar's appearance in Gaul? Give a brief outline of his work there up to 54 B.C.

VOCABULARY.

I.

quotannis ..... adv., *every year.*
consuerat ..... consuescō, -ĕre, -suevi, -suetum, *to be accustomed.*
reficiendas..... reficio, -ĕre, -feci, -fectum, *to repair.*
onerandi..... onero, -are, *to lade.*
subductiones ..... subductio, -onis, f., *hauling up* (*on the beach*)
humiliores ..... humilis, -e (*low*), *shallow.*
aestuum ..... aestus, -ūs, m., *tide* (prop. of fire, *heat, glow*).
fluctus..... fluctus, -ūs, m., *a wave.*
cognoverat..... cognosco, -ĕre, -gnovi, -gnitum, *to learn.*
iumentorum ..... iumentum, -i, n., *a beast of burthen.*
actuarias..... actuarius, -a, -um *using both oars and sails.*
armandas ..... armo, -are, *to fit.*
conventibus ..... conventus, -ūs, m. (*a meeting*), *assizes.*
peractis ..... perago, -ĕre, -egi, -actum, *to complete.*
imperat ..... impero, -are (*to command*), *levy.*
consilio ..... consilium, -ii, n. (*design*), *authority.*
rationibus ..... ratio, -onis, f. (*reason*), *a reasonable way.*
persecuturum ..... persequor, -i, -secutus sum, *to proceed against.*
demonstrat ..... demonstro, -are, *to state clearly.*
arbitros ..... arbiter, -tri, m., *an arbitrator.*
litem ..... lis, lītis, f. (*a lawsuit*) ; phr. l. aestimare, *to assess damages.*
constituant ..... constituo, -ĕre, -ui, -utum, *to fix.*

II.

studio ..... studium, -ii, n., *energy.*
inopia..... inopia, -ae, f., *scarcity.*
deduci ..... deduco, -ĕre, -duxi, -ductum, *to launch.*
negotio ..... negotium, -ii, n., *business.*
traiectum ..... traiectus, -ūs, m., *crossing.*
expeditis ..... expeditus, -a, -um, *lightly equipped.*
sollicitare ..... sollicito, -are, *to stir up.*

III.

valet ..... valeo, -ēre, -ui. *to be strong.*
tangit ..... tango, -ĕre, tetigi, tactum (*to touch*), *to border on.*
officio ..... officium, -ii, n., *duty.*
defecturos ..... deficio, -ĕre, -feci, -fectum, *to abandon.*
confirmavit ..... confirmo, -are, *to assure.*
gererentur ..... gero, -ĕre, gessi, gestum, *to transact.*
cogere ..... cogo, -ĕre, coegi, coactum, *to collect.*
abditis ..... abdo, -ĕre, -didi, -ditum, *to conceal.*
instituit ..... instituo, -ĕre, -ui, -utum (*to set up*), *to begin.*
adducti ..... adduco, -ĕre, -duxi, -ductum (*to lead to*), *to induce.*
privatim ..... adv., *privately.*
consulere ..... consulo, -ĕre, -sului, -sultum, *to consult the interests of.*
idcirco ..... adv., *for this reason.*
discedere ..... discedo, -ĕre, -cessi, -cessum, *to leave.*
imprudentiam ..... imprudentia, -ae, f., *want of foresight.*
laberetur ..... labor, -i, lapsus sum (*to fall*), *to fall into error.*
permissurum ..... permitto, -ĕre, -misi, -missum (*to give up*), *to entrust.*

IV.

obsidibus ..... obses, -idis, c., *a hostage.*
propinquis ..... propinquus, -i, m., *a relation.*
evocaverat ..... evoco, -are, *to summon.*
setius ..... i.q. secius, compar. of secus, *otherwise.*
singillatim ..... adv., *one by one.*
conciliavit ..... concilio, -are, *to reconcile.*
merito ..... meritum, -i, n., *deserts.*
intellegebat ..... intellego, -ĕre, -lexi, -lectum, *to be sensible of.*
egregiam ..... egregius, -a, -um, *eminent.*
voluntatem ..... voluntas, -tatis, f., *goodwill.*
perspexisset ..... perspicio, -ĕre, -spexi, -spectum, *to perceive.*
graviter tulit ..... gr. fero, ferre, tuli, latum, phr., *to be vexed at.*
exarsit ..... exardesco, -ĕre, -arsi, -arsum (*to burst into a blaze*), *to be roused to wrath.*

V.

reiectas ..... reicio, -ĕre, -ieci, -iectum, *to cast back.*
eodem ..... adv., *to the same place.*
instructas ..... instruo, -ĕre, -struxi, -structum, *to fit out.*
invenit ..... invenio, -ire, -veni, -ventum, *to find.*
decreverat ..... decerno, -ĕre, -crevi, -cretum, *to decide*
verebatur ..... vereor, -ēri, veritus sum, *to fear.*

VI.

rerum novarum .. res novae, rerum novarum, f., *revolution.*
accedebat ..... accedo, -ĕre, -cessi, -cessum, *to be added.*
deferri ..... defero, -ferre, -tuli, -latum, *to confer.*
recusandi ..... recuso, -are, *to refuse.*
deprecandi..... deprecor, -ari, -atus sum, v. dep., *to pray against.*
hospitibus ..... hospes, -itis, m., *a (guest) friend.*
contendit ..... contendo, -ĕre, -di, -tum, *to exert oneself.*
insuetus ..... insuetus, -a, -um, *unused to.*
religionibus ..... religio, -onis, f., *a religious scruple.*
obstinate ..... adv., *firmly.*
sollicitare ..... sollicito, -are (*to agitate*), *to incite to rebellion.*
sevocare .. .. sevoco, -are (*to call aside*), *to interview privately.*
spoliaretur..... spolio, -are, *to deprive of.*
interficere ..... interficio, -ĕre, -feci, -fectum, *to kill.*
traductos ..... traduco, -ĕre, -duxi, -ductum, *to convey over.*
necaret ..... neco, -are, *to slay.*
fidem interponere... fides, -ei, f., interpono, -ĕre, -posui, -positum, phr., *to pledge one's word.*
ex usu..... phr., *to the advantage of.*
administrarent ..... administro, -are, *to attend to.*
deferebantur ..... defero, -ferre, -tuli, -latum (*to bring down*), *to report.*

VII.

tribuebat ..... tribuo, -ĕre, -ui, -utum, *to pay.*
coercendum ..... coerceo, -ēre, -cui, -citum, *to repress.*
statuebat ..... statuo, -ere, -ui, -utum, *to decide.*
amentiam ..... amentia, -ae, f., *madness.*
Corus ..... Corus, -i, m., *the N. W. wind.*
flare..... flo, -are, *to blow.*
dabat operam ..... opera, -ae, f., do, dare, dedi, datum, *to take pains.*
nactus..... nanciscor, -i, nactus sum, v. dep., *to get.*
tempestatem ..... tempestas, -tatis, f., *weather.*
conscendere ..... conscendo, -ĕre, -di, -sum (*to ascend*), *to embark.*
impeditis ..... impeditus, -a, -um, *engaged.*
intermissa .... intermitto, -ĕre, -misi, -missum, *to interrupt.*
postpositis..... postpono, -ere, -posui, -positum, *to postpone.*
vim faciat ..... vis, vim, vi, f., facio, -ĕre, feci, factum, *to offer violence.*
sano ..... sanus, -a, -um, *rational.*
fidem ..... fides, -ei, f., *loyalty.*

VIII.

tueretur ..... tueor, -ēre, tuitus sum, *to guard.*
rem frumentariam .. res, rei, f., frumentarius, -a, -um, *supplies of corn.*

provideret	provideo, -ēre, -vidi, -visum, *to see to.*
pro	prep., *according to.*
tempore	tempus, -oris, n., *time.*
re	res, -ei, f., *circumstance.*
solvit	solvo, -ĕre, solvi, solutum (*to loose*), phr., solvere navem, *to weigh anchor.*
Africo	Africus, -i, m., *the S. W. wind.*
provectus	proveho, -ĕre, -vexi, -vectum, *to carry onwards.*
delatus	defero, -ferre, -tuli, -latum, *to carry down.*
aestu	aestus, -ūs, m., *the tide.*
sub sinistra	sinistra, -ae, f., *on the left side.*
remis	remus, -i, m., *an oar.*
superiore	superior, -ius, compar. from supra, *previous.*
admodum	adv., *very much.*
vectoriis navigiis	vectorius, -a, -um, navigium, -ii, n., *a transport.*
longarum navium	longus, -a, -um, navis, -is, f., *a ship of war.*
cursum	cursus, -ūs, m., *progress.*
adaequarunt	adaequo, -are, *to equal.*
annotinis	annotinus, -a, -um, *used in the previous year*

IX.

exposito	expono, -ĕre, -posui, -positum, *to land.*
idoneo	idoneus, -a, -um, *suitable.*
praesidio	praesidium, -ii, n., *a guard.*
de	prep., *about.*
vigilia	vigilia, -ae, f., *watch.*
molli	mollis, -e (*soft*), *gently rising.*
deligatas	deligo, -are, *to moor.*
essedis	essedum, -i, n., *a two-wheeled chariot.*
committere	committo, -ĕre, -misi, -missum, *to join* (*battle*).
nancti	nanciscor, -i, nactus and nanctus sum, *to find.*
opere	opus, -ĕris, n., *labour.*
crebris	creber, -bra, -brum, *numerous.*
succisis	succido, -ĕre, -di, -sum, *to cut down.*
introitus	introitus, -ūs, m., *an entrance.*
praeclusi	praecludo, -ĕre, -si, -sum, *to block.*
rari	rarus, -a, -um, *scattered.*
testudine	testudo, -inis, f. (*a tortoise*), *a shelter made by holding shields together.*
aggere	agger, -ĕris, m., *a mound.*
adiecto	adicio, -ĕre, -ieci, -iectum, *to throw up against.*
vetuit	veto, -are, vetui, vetitum, *to forbid.*

X.

mane	adv., *in the morning.*
tripertito	adv., *in three divisions.*
aliquantum	adv., *much, a considerable amount.*

prospectu ..... prospectus, -ūs, m., *sight.*
afflictas ..... affligo, -ĕre, -flixi, -flictum, *to dash together.*
funes ..... funis, -is, m., *a rope.*
subsisterent ..... subsisto, -ĕre, -stiti, *to hold out.*
gubernatores ..... gubernator, -ōris, m., *steersman.*
incommodum ..... incommodum, -i, n., *damage.*

XI.

revertitur ..... revertor, -i, -versus sum, *to return.*
fere ..... adv., *almost.*
coram ..... adv. (*in the presence of*), *with his own eye*
negotio ..... negotium, -ii, n., *trouble.*
fabros ..... faber, -bri, m., *a skilled workman.*
arcessi ..... arcesso, -ĕre, -ivi, -itum, *to send for.*
operae ..... opera, -ae, f., *labour.*
laboris ..... labor, -oris, m., *difficulty.*
subduci ..... subduco, -ĕre, -duxi, -ductum, *to draw up*
summa ..... summa, -ae, f. (*that which is highest*), phr., summa imperii, *supreme command.*
consilio ..... consilium, -ii, *assembly.*
continentia ..... continens, -entis, *continual.*
intercesserant ..... intercedo, -ĕre, -cessi, -cessum, *to take place.*
praefecerant ..... praeficio, -ĕre, -feci, -fectum, *to place in command.*

XII.

memoria ..... memoria, -ae, f., *tradition.*
proditum ..... prodo, -ĕre, -didi, -dĭtum, *to hand down.*
orti ..... orior, -iri, ortus sum, *to spring from.*
inferendi ..... infero, -ferre, -tuli, -latum, *to wage* (*war*).
consimilia ..... consimilis, -e, *exactly like.*
pecorum ..... pecus, -ŏris, n., *cattle.*
nummo ..... nummus, -i, m., *money.*
taleis ..... talea, -ae, f. (*a cutting*), *a bar.*
examinatis ..... examino, -are, *to weigh.*
plumbum album ... n., *tin.*
mediterraneis ..... mediterraneus, -a, -um, *midland.*
exigua ..... exiguus, -a, -um, *scanty.*
materia ..... materia, -ae, f., *timber.*
fagum ..... fagus, -i, f., *a beech tree.*
abietem ..... abies, -ĕtis, f., *a pine tree.*
leporem ..... lepus, -ŏris, m., *a hare.*
gallinam ..... gallina, -ae, f., *a hen.*
anserem ..... anser, -eris, m., *a goose.*
fas ..... indecl., n., *right.*
remissioribus ..... remissus, -a, -um (*slack*), *mild.*

XIII.

triquetra..... triquetrus, -a, -um, *triangular.*
meridiem ..... meridies, -ei, m., *the South.*
vergit ..... vergo, -ĕre, *to trend.*
dimidio ..... dimidium, -ii, n., *a half.*
transmissus ..... transmissus, -ūs, m., *passage.*
subiectae ..... subicio, -ĕre, -ieci, -iectum, *to place near.*
bruma ..... bruma, -ae, f., *winter.*
percontationibus ... percontatio, -onis, f., *investigation.*
reperiebamus..... reperio, -ire, repperi, repertum, *to discover.*
mensuris..... mensura, -ae, f., *measurement.*
fert ..... fero, ferre, tuli, latum (*to bring*), *to say.*
septentriones ..... septentriones, -um, m. pl., *the North.*
obiecta ..... obicio, -ĕre, -ieci, -iectum, *to place opposite*

XIV.

humanissimi ..... superl. humanus, -a, -um, *refined.*
consuetudine..... consuetudo, -inis, f., *custom.*
plerique ..... (sing. plerusque, -aque, -umque, very rare) *the greater number, most.*
serunt..... sero, -ĕre, sēvi, sătum, *to sow.*
lacte ..... lac, -tis, n., *milk.*
carne ..... caro, carnis, f., *flesh.*
pellibus ..... pellis, -is, f., *skin.*
vitro ..... vitrum, -i, n., *woad.*
inficiunt..... inficio, -ĕre, -feci, -fectum, *to stain.*
capillo..... capillus, -i, m., *hair.*
promisso ..... promitto, -ĕre, -misi, -missum (*to let hang down*), *to let grow.*
rasa ..... rado, -ĕre, rasi, rasum, *to shave.*
labrum ..... labrum, -i, n., *a lip.*
deducta est..... deduco, -ĕre, -duxi, -ductum (*to conduct*), *to marry* (active).

XV.

conflixerunt ..... confligo, -ĕre, -xi, -ctum (*to dash together*), *to fight.*
partibus..... pars, -tis, f. (*a part*), omnibus p., *at all points.*
compulerint ..... compello, -ĕre, -puli, -pulsum, *to drive.*
cupidius ..... compar. adv., *too eagerly.*
amiserunt ..... amitto, -ĕre, -misi, -missum, *to lose.*
statione ..... statio, -ōnis, f., *a post;* in statione, *on guard.*
perexiguo ..... perexiguus, -a, -um, *very small.*
perruperunt ..... perrumpo, -ĕre, -rupi, -ruptum, *to break through.*
incolumes ..... incolumis, -e, *uninjured.*

XVI.

dimicaretur ..... dimico, -are, *to fight.*
consulto ..... adv., *deliberately.*
paulum ..... adv., *a little.*
removissent ..... removeo, -ēre, -movi, -motum, *to draw away.*
desilirent ..... desilio, -īre, -silui, -sultum, *to leap down.*
ratio ..... ratio, -onis, f., *a method.*
conferti ..... confertus, -a, -um (part. confercio), *in close array.*
dispositas ..... dispono, -ĕre, -posui, -positum, *to set at intervals.*
deinceps ..... adv., *in succession.*
integri ..... integer, -gra, -grum, *vigorous.*
defetigatis ..... defetigatus, -a, -um, *wearied out.*

XVII.

lenius ..... compar. adv., *with less spirit*
lacessere ..... lacesso, -ĕre, lacessīvi, lacessītum, *to provoke.*
pabulandi ..... pabulor, -are, *to forage.*
advolaverunt ..... advolo, -are (*to fly towards*), *to rush upon.*
absisterent ..... absisto, -ĕre, abstiti, *to be removed from.*
confisi ..... confido, -ĕre, -fisus sum, *to feel confidence.*
consistendi ..... consisto, -ĕre, -stiti, -stitum (*to stop*), *to rally.*
protinus ..... adv., *forthwith.*

XVIII.

aegre ..... adv., *with difficulty.*
animum advertit ... i.q. animadverto, -ĕre, -verti, -versum, *to perceive.*
sudibus ..... sudes or -is, -is, f., *a stake.*
praefixis ..... praefigo, -ĕre, -fixi, -fixum, *to fix in front*
tegebantur ..... tego, -ĕre, -texi, -tectum, *to cover.*
confestim ..... adv., *immediately.*
exstarent ..... exsto, -are, *to stand above*
dimitterent ..... dimitto, -ĕre, -misi, -missum, *to abandon*

XIX.

contentionis ..... contentio, -onis, f., *a contest.*
amplioribus ..... compar. amplus, -a, -um, *abundant.*
servabat ..... servo, -are, *to watch.*
impeditis ..... impeditus, -a, -um, *difficult of passage.*
silvestribus ..... silvestris, e., *woody.*
praedandi ..... praedor, -ari, v. dep., *to pillage.*
semitisque ..... semita, -ae, f. (*a path*), *a by-way.*
noceretur ..... noceo, -ēre, -ui, itum, *to injure.*

XX.

firmissima ..... superl. firmus, -a, -um, *strong.*
secutus ..... sequor, -i, secutus sum (*to follow*), *to trust to.*
obtinuerat ..... obtineo, -ēre, -tinui, -tentum, *to hold.*
vitaverat ..... vito, -are, *to avoid.*
praesit ..... praesum, -esse, -fui, *to rule over.*

XXI.

dedunt ..... dedo, -ĕre, dedidi, dedĭtum, *to surrender.*
paludibus ..... palus, -ūdis, f., *a swamp.*
paulisper ..... adv., *for a short time.*
comprehensi ..... comprehendo, -ĕre, -di, -sum, *to catch.*

XXII.

de improviso ..... adv. phr., *unexpectedly.*
adoriantur ..... adorior, -īri, -ortus sum, *to attack.*
eruptione ..... eruptio, -onis, f., *a sally.*
detrimentis ..... detrimentum, -i, n., *loss.*
hiemare ..... hiemo, -are, *to winter.*
repentinos ..... repentinus, -a, -um *unexpected.*
extrahi ..... extraho, -ĕre, -traxi, -tractum (*to draw out*), *to spin out.*
vectigalis ..... vectigal, -ālis, n., *tribute* (*paid to the State*).
penderet ..... pendo, -ĕre, pependi, pensum, *to pay.*
interdicit ..... interdico, -ĕre, -dixi, -dictum, *to forbid.*

XXIII.

commeatibus ..... commeatus, -ūs, m. (*a going to and fro*), *a passage.*
desideraretur ..... desidero, -are, *to miss.*
inanes ..... inanis, -e, *empty.*
caperent ..... capio, -ĕre, cepi, captum (*to take*), *to reach.*
aliquamdiu ..... adv., *for some time.*
excluderetur ..... excludo, -ĕre, -si, -sum, *to prevent.*
necessario ..... adv., *of necessity.*
angustius ..... compar. adv., *more closely.*
solvisset ..... solvo, -ĕre, solvi, solutum (*to untie*), *to weigh anchor.*
attigit ..... attingo, -ĕre, -tigi, -tactum (*to touch*), *to reach.*

XXIV.

peracto ..... perago, -ĕre, -egi, -actum (*to accomplish*), *to get through.*
siccitates ..... siccitas, -tatis, *drought.*
angustius ..... angustus, -a, -um (*narrow*), *scanty.*
confinio ..... confinium, -ii, n., *confines.*
proxime ..... adv., *last.*
mederi ..... medeor, -ēri, v. dep., *to remedy.*

pacatissimam ..... superl. pacatus, -a, -um, *peaceful.*
quoad ..... adv., *until.*

XXV.

opera ..... opera, -ae, f., *services.*
fuerat usus..... utor, -i, usus sum (*to use*), *to avail oneself of.*
palam..... adv. (*openly*), *in the presence of.*
pertinebat..... pertineo, -ēre, -tinui, -tentum (*to extend to*), *to affect.*
impulsu ..... impulsus, -us, m., *instigation.*
tradiderat ..... trado, -ĕre, -didi, -ditum, *to entrust.*
certior factus est ... certior, fio, fieri, factus sum, *to be informed.*
perventum..... pervenio, -ire, -veni, -ventum, *to reach.*

XXVI.

repentini ..... repentinus, -a, -um, *sudden.*
tumultus ..... tumultus, -ūs, m. (*violent commotion*), *a sudden outbreak of war.*
praesto ..... adv. (*at hand*), p. esse, *to wait upon.*
oppressis ..... opprimo, -ĕre, -pressi, -pressum, *to overcome.*
lignatoribus ..... lignator, -ōris, m., *wood-cutter.*
controversias..... controversia, -ae, f., *quarrel.*

XXVII.

familiaris ..... familiaris, -is, m., *a friend.*
ventitare ..... ventito, -are (*to come frequently*), *to have dealings with.*
confiteri..... confiteor, -ēri, -fessus sum, *to confess.*
stipendio ..... stipendium, -ii, n., *tribute.*
catenis ..... catena, -ae, f., *a chain.*
coactu ..... coactus, -ūs, m., *compulsion.*
porro ..... adv., *in turn.*
coniurationi ..... coniuratio, -onis, f., *a conspiracy.*
probare ..... probo, -are, *to prove.*
imperitus ..... imperitus, -a, -um, *ignorant.*
subsidio ..... subsidium, -ii, n., *aid.*
praesertim..... adv., *especially.*
recuperanda ..... recupero, -are, *to recover.*
initum ..... ineo, -ire, -ivi, -ĭtum (*to enter*), consilium in., *to form a plan.*
pietate ..... pietas, -tatis, f., *duty to one's country* (*parents, etc.*).
rationem ..... ratio, -ōnis, f., *regard.*
biduo ..... biduum, -i, n., *a period of two days.*
finitimi ..... finitimus, -a, -um, *neighbouring.*
sentiant..... sentio, -ire, sensi, sensum (*to perceive*), *to become aware of.*
levetur ..... levo, -are, *to relieve.*

gratiam referre..... *to do a favour to.*
sponte ..... (abl. of obsol. noun spons), *of one's own accord.*

XXVIII.

deferunt..... defero, -ferre, -tuli, -latum, *to refer.*
temere ..... adv., *rashly.*
iniussu ..... abl. iniussus, m. (the only case in use), *without orders.*
sustineri..... sustineo, -ēre, -tinui, -tentum, *to withstand.*
testimonio ..... testimonium, -ii, n., *proof.*
ultro ..... adv., *moreover too.*
postremo ..... adv., *finally.*
levius ..... levis, -e (*light*), *weak.*
auctore ..... auctor, -ōris, m., *an adviser.*

XXIX.

sero..... adv., *late.*
occasionem ..... occasio, -onis, f., *opportunity.*
spectare ..... specto, -are, *to regard.*
subesse ..... subsum, -esse (no perf.), *to be near.*
ardere..... ardeo, -ēre, arsi, arsum (*to burn*), *to be furious.*
certa re ..... res, -ei, f., certus, -a, -um, *definite grounds.*
consentiret..... consentio, -ire, -sensi, -sensum, *to be in league with.*
exitum ..... exitus, -ūs, m., *result.*

XXX.

acriter ..... adv., *strongly.*
rationem reposcent ratio, -onis, f., reposco, -ĕre, *to demand an explanation.*
perendino ..... perendinus, -a, -um (only in ref. to *dies*), *after to-morrow.*
relegati ..... relego, -are, *to banish.*
intereant ..... intereo, -ire, -ii, -itum, *to perish.*

XXXI.

consurgitur ..... consurgo, -ĕre, -surrexi, -surrectum, *to rise.*
pertinacia ..... pertinacia, -ae, f., *obstinacy.*
deducant ..... deduco, -ĕre, -duxi, -ductum, *to bring to.*
tandem ..... adv., *at last.*
dat manus ..... phr., *surrenders.*
vigiliis ..... vigilia, -ae, f., *wakefulness.*
instrumento ..... instrumentum, -i, n., *furniture.*
excogitantur ..... excogito, -are (*to think out*), *to devise*
languore..... languor, -ōris, m., *fatigue.*

XXXII.

fremitu ..... fremitus, -ūs, m., *noise.*
bipertito..... adv., *in two divisions.*
convallem ..... convallis, -is, f., *a valley.*

XXXIII.

concursare..... concurso, -are, *to rush to and fro.*
negotio ..... negotium, -ii, n., *time of action.*
officia ..... officium, -ii, n., *duty.*
praestabat..... praesto, -are, -stiti, -stitum and -statum, *to perform.*
obire ..... obeo, -īre, -ii, -ĭtum (*to go against*), *to attend to.*
pronuntiare ..... pronuntio, -are, *to give the word.*
incommode accidit phr., *the result was disastrous.*
vulgo ..... adv., *on all sides.*
properaret..... propero, -are, *to hasten.*

XXXIV.

consilium ..... consilium, -ii, n., *a plan of action.*
proinde ..... adv., *therefore.*
posita..... pono, -ĕre, posui, positum (*to place*), in pass., *to depend upon.*
procul..... adv., *from a distance.*
cotidiana ..... cotidianus, -a, -um, i. q. quotidianus, *daily.*

XXXV.

praecepto ..... praeceptum, -i, n., *instruction.*
observato ..... observo, -are, *to observe.*
latere ..... latus, -ĕris, n., *side.*
sin ..... conj., *but if.*
conflictati ..... conflicto, -are, *to contend against.*
committebant ..... committo, -ĕre, -misi, -missum (*to go to work*), *to do.*
primum pilum duxerat..... phr., *had been a centurion of the first rank.*
femur..... femur, -ŏris, -ĭnis, n., *the thigh.*
tragula ..... tragula, -ae, f., *a kind of dart.*
subvenit..... subvenio, -ire, -veni, -ventum, *to come to the aid of.*
funda ..... funda, -ae, f., *a sling.*

XXXVI.

interpretem ..... interpres, -ĕtis, m., *an interpreter.*
parcat..... parco, -ĕre, peperci (parsi), parcitum (parsum), *to spare.*

impetrari ..... impetro, -are, *to obtain.*
fidem interponere... phr., *to pledge his word.*
saucio..... saucius, -a, -um, *wounded.*

XXXVII.

in praesentia..... adv. phr., *at the time.*
condicionibus ..... condicio, -onis, f., *conditions (of surrender).*
agunt..... ago, -ĕre, egi, actum, *to treat.*
conclamant ..... conclamo, -are, *to raise a shout.*
ululatum ..... ululatus, -ūs, m., *a wild cry.*
aquilifer..... ..... aquilifer, -eri, m., *the bearer of the eagle.*
elapsi ..... elabor, -i, elapsus sum, *to escape.*
incertis ..... incertus, -a, -um, *taken at haphazard.*

XXXVIII.

sublatus..... sublatus, -a, -um (part. tollo), *elated.*
in perpetuum ..... adv. phr., *for ever.*
ulciscendi ..... ulciscor, -i, ultus sum, *to take vengeance on.*
dimittant ..... dimitto, -ĕre, -misi, -missum, *to let slip.*
adiutorem ..... adiutor, -ōris, m., *a helper.*

XXXIX.

de improviso..... adv. phr., *unexpectedly.*
advolant..... advolo, -are, *to hasten towards.*
lignationis..... lignatio, -onis, f., *cutting wood.*
manu ..... manus, -ūs, f. (*a hand*), *a band.*
conscendunt ..... conscendo, -ĕre, -scendi, -scensum (*to ascend*), *man.*
adepti..... adipiscor, -i, adeptus sum, *to obtain.*

XL.

propositis ..... propono, -ĕre, -posui, -positum, *to offer.*
pertulissent ..... perfero, -ferre, -tuli, -latum, *to carry through.*
admodum ..... adv., *quite.*
excitantur..... excito, -are, *to raise.*
deesse..... desum, -esse, -fui, *to be lacking.*
fossam ..... fossa, -ae, f., *a ditch.*
complent ..... compleo, -ēre, -plevi, -pletum, *to fill up.*
deinceps..... adv., *one after another.*
facultas ..... facultas, -tatis, f., *opportunity.*
praeustae ..... praeustus, -a, -um (part. praeuro), *charred at the end.*
muralium ..... muralis, -e, *mural.*
contabulantur ..... contabulo, -are, *to board over.*
pinnae ..... pinna, -ae. f., *a battlement.*

loricae ..... lorica, -ae, f. (*a corselet*), *a breastwork.*
cratibus ..... cratis, -is, f., *wicker work.*
tenuissima..... tenuis, -e (*thin*), *delicate.*
concursu..... concursus, -ūs, m. (*a charge*), *pressure.*

XLI.

sermonis aditum ... sermo, -onis, m., aditus, -ūs, m., *permission to come to speech with.*
potestate ..... potestas, -tatis, f. (*power*), *an opportunity.*
fidei ..... fides, -ei, f., *credence.*
inveterascere..... inveterasco, -ĕre, inveteravi, *to become established by time.*

XLII.

ferramentorum..... ferramentum, -i, n., *an iron tool.*
idonea ..... idoneus, -a, -um, *suitable.*
caespites..... caespes, -itis, m., *a turf.*
sagulis ..... sagulum, -i, n., *a small cloak.*
exhaurire ..... exhaurio, -ire, -hausi, -haustum, *to empty out.*
nitebantur..... nitor, -i, nisus (nixus) sum, *to labour hard.*
falces ..... falx, -cis, f. (*a sickle*), *a grappling iron.*

XLIII.

ferventes ..... ferveo, -ēre, -bui (and fervo, -ĕre, -vi), *to be red hot.*
fusili ..... fusilis, -e, *softened.*
argilla ..... argilla, -ae, f. (*white clay*), *clay.*
glandes ..... glans, -dis, f. (*an acorn*), *a ball.*
iacula..... iaculum, -i, n., *a javelin.*
casas ..... casa, -ae, f., *a hut.*
stramentis ..... stramentum, -i, n., *straw.*
parta ..... pario, -ĕre, pĕpĕri, partum (*to bring forth*), *to gain.*
explorata ..... exploro, -are (*to search out*), perf. part., *assured.*
scalis ..... scala, -ae, f., *a ladder.*
torrerentur..... torreo, -ēre, -torrui, -tostum, *to scorch.*
impedimenta..... impedimenta, -orum, n. pl., *baggage.*
fortunas ..... fortunae, -arum, f. pl., *property.*
demigrandi ..... demigro, -are, *to depart from.*
constipaverant ..... constipo, -are, *to crowd together.*
adacta..... adigo, -ĕre, -egi, -actum, *to advance.*
contingente ..... contingo, -ĕre, -tigi, -tactum (*to touch*), *to come close up to.*
nutu ..... nutus, -ūs, m. (*a nod*), *gesture.*
deturbati ..... deturbo, -are, *to dislodge.*
succensa est ..... succendo, -ĕre, -di, -sum, *to set on fire.*

XLIV.

appropinquarent ... appropinquo, -are, *to draw near.*
anteferretur ..... antefero, -ferre, -tuli, -latum, *to prefer.*
simultatibus ..... simultas, -tatis, f., *rivalry.*
irrumpit ..... irrumpo, -ĕre, -rupi, -ruptum (*to burst into*), *to charge.*
existimationem ..... existimatio, -ōnis, *judgment.*
subsequitur ..... subsequor, -i, -cutus sum, *to follow close.*
mediocri ..... mediocris, -e, *moderate.*
exanimato ..... exanimatus, -a, -um, *lifeless.*
verutum ..... verutum, -i, n., *a javelin.*
balteo ..... balteus, -i, m., *a belt.*
vaginam ..... vagina, -ae, f., *a sheath.*
succurrit ..... succurro, -ĕre, -curri, -cursum, *to run to one's aid.*
laboranti ..... laboro, -are, *to be in trouble.*
comminus ..... adv., *hand to hand.*
propellit ..... propello, -ĕre, -puli, -pulsum, *to drive before one.*
deiectus ..... deicio, -ĕre, -iecci, -iectum, *to cast down.*
versavit ..... verso, -are (*to turn about*), *to direct in turn.*

XLV.

confecta ..... conficio, -ĕre, -feci, -fectum (*to finish*), *to wear out.*
praestiterat ..... praesto, -āre, -stiti, -stitum, *to prove.*
versatus ..... versor, -ari (*to be engaged in*), *to mingle with.*

XLVI.

commodo ..... commodum, -i, n., *advantage.*
exspectandam ..... exspecto, -are, *to wait for.*

XLVII.

antecursoribus ..... antecursores, -um, m., *the advanced guard.*
occurrit ..... occurro, -ĕre, -curri, -cursum, *to meet.*
interitu ..... interitus, -ūs, m., *death.*
efferri ..... efferor, -ferri, elatus sum (pass. of *effero*), *to be elated.*
perscribit ..... perscribo, -ĕre, -scripsi, -scriptum, *to give a full account.*

XLVIII.

opinione ..... opinio, -onis, f., *expectation.*
ammentum ..... i.q. amentum, -i, n., *a thong.*
pristinam ..... pristinus, -a, -um, *previous.*
casu ..... (casus, -ūs, m., *misfortune*), *unluckily.*
dempta ..... demo, -ĕre, -mpsi, -mptum, *to draw out.*
afficit ..... afficio, -ĕre, -feci, -fectum, *to affect.*

XLIX.

convertisse..... converto, -ĕre, -ti, -sum, *to turn against.*
tantulis ..... tantulus, -a, -um, *so small.*
iniquo..... iniquus, -a, -um, *unfavourable.*
remittendum..... remitto, -ĕre, -misi, -missum, *to abate.*
contrahit ..... contraho, -ĕre, -traxi, -tractum, *to contract.*
speculatoribus ..... speculator, -ōris, m., *a scout.*

L.

elicere ..... elicio, -ĕre, -licui (-lexi), -licitum, *to draw out.*
administrandis ..... administro, -are, *to execute.*
agi ..... ago, -ĕre, egi, actum, *to act.*

LI.

praeconibus ..... praeco, -ōnis, m., *a herald.*
obstructis ..... obstruo, -ĕre, -struxi, -structum, *to block.*
in speciem..... phr., *for appearance' sake.*
introrumpere ..... introrumpo, -ĕre, -rupi, -ruptum, *to burst in.*
scindere ..... scindo, -ĕre, scidi, scissum, *to tear down.*

LII.

detrimento ..... detrimentum, -i, n., *damage.*
producta ..... produco, -ĕre, -duxi, -ductum (*to lead out*), *to parade.*
contione..... contio, -ōnis, f., *an assembly*
expiato ..... expio, -are, *to atone for.*

LIII.

decreverat ..... decerno, -ĕre, -crevi, -cretum, *to decide.*
profugit ..... profugo, -ĕre, -fugi, *to flee away.*
motus ..... motus, -ūs, m., *disturbance.*
consultabant..... consulto, -are, *to take counsel.*
sollicitudine ..... sollicitudo, -inis, f., *anxiety.*
intercessit ..... intercedo, -ĕre, -cessi, -cessum (*to intervene*), *to pass.*
adeo ..... adv., *to such an extent.*

LIV.

praesensisset..... praesentio, -ire, -sensi, -sensum (*to perceive beforehand*), *to divine.*
satisfaciendi ..... satisfacio, -ĕre, -feci, -factum, *to make excuses to.*
valuit ..... valeo, -ēre, -ui (*to be strong*), *to produce an effect.*
commutationem ... commutatio, -ōnis, f., *a complete change.*

officiis ..... officium, -ii, n., *service.*
opinionis ..... opinio, -onis, f., *reputation.*
deperdidisse ..... deperdo, -ĕre, -dĭdi, -dĭtum, *to lose.*
dolebant ..... doleo, -ēre, -ui, -itum, *to grieve for.*

LV.

intermiserunt ..... intermitto, -ĕre, -misi, -missum, *to cease.*
amplius ..... compar. adv., *further.*
lapsus ..... labor, -i, lapsus sum (*to fall*), *to be disappointed.*
comparaverat ..... comparo, -are, *to get together.*
gratiam ..... gratia, -ae, f., *favour.*

LVI.

facinoris ..... facinus, -oris, n., *guilt.*
puberes ..... puber (pubes), -eris, *of mature age.*
cruciatibus ..... cruciatus, -ūs, m., *torture.*
publicat ..... publico, -are (*to make public property*), *to confiscate.*

LVII.

rei bene gerendae ... (res, -rei, f., *an affair*, gero, -ĕre, gessi, gestum, *to conduct*), *of gaining a success.*
cognita ..... cognosco, -ĕre, -gnovi, -gnitum, *to learn of.*
habuerat ..... habeo, -ēre, -ui, -itum (*to hold*), *to deliver* (*a speech*).
augebat ..... augeo, -ēre, auxi, auctum, *to increase.*

LVIII.

intromissis ..... intromitto, -ĕre, -misi, -missum, *to admit.*
ratione ..... ratio, -ōnis, f. (*a reckoning*), *means.*
visum est ..... (video, -ēre, vidi, visum, *to see*), impers., *it seemed good.*
dissipati ..... dissipo, -are, *to scatter.*
praecipit ..... praecipio, -ĕre, -cepi, -ceptum, *to give orders.*
interdicit ..... interdico, -ĕre, -dixi, -dictum, *to forbid.*
submittit ..... submitto, -ĕre, -misi, -missum, *to send in support.*
comprobat ..... comprobo, -are, *to justify.*
vado ..... vadum, -i, n., *a ford.*

CÆSAR

DE BELLO GALLICO, V.

A TRANSLATION.

1. In the consulship of L. Domitius and Ap. Claudius, Cæsar, when—as he had been accustomed to do every year—he left his winter quarters for Italy, ordered the lieutenants whom he had placed in command of the legions to get as many ships as possible built in the winter and to have the old ones repaired. He described what their measure and shape was to be. For the sake of quickness in loading and ease in drawing them up on the shore, he made them a little more shallow than those which we have been wont to use on our own waters, and he did this the rather because he had learned that on account of the frequent turns of the tide the waves there were not so great; and, with a view to the transport of heavy loads and of a great number of baggage animals, he made them of somewhat greater beam than those which we use in other seas. He ordered them all to be adapted to the use of both sails and oars, and for this purpose a low freeboard is of great advantage. He ordered the materials necessary for the fitting of ships to be imported from Spain. He himself, when he had got through the assizes in Hither Gaul, set out for Illyricum, because he heard that the territory in the immediate neighbourhood of that province was being wasted by raids on the part of the Pirustæ. When he had arrived there, he made a requisition for troops from the several states, and bade them assemble at a certain place. And when this was announced to them, the Pirustæ sent ambassadors

to him to inform him that none of these incursions had been made by authority of the state, and they declared that they were prepared in every possible way to make compensation for any wrong done. When he understood the drift of their address Cæsar required hostages from them, and ordered them to be brought in by a certain day. He gave them clearly to understand that, unless they did so, he would make war upon the whole state. When they were brought in on the day as he had directed, he appointed arbitrators between the states to assess the damage and fix the penalty to be paid.

2. When this business had been settled and the assizes held, he returned to Hither Gaul, and thence proceeded to his army. When he had reached it, he inspected all the winter-quarters, and found that, owing to the singular energy of the soldiers, notwithstanding the very great dearth of all materials, about six hundred ships of the kind we have described above and twenty-eight ships of war had been equipped, and that they were not very far from being fit for launching in a few days. After warmly praising the soldiers and those who had been in charge of the work, he explained to them what he wished to be done, and bade them all assemble at Portus Itius, from which harbour he had ascertained that the crossing to Britain was the easiest, the passage being about thirty miles from the continent. For this purpose he left what seemed to him a sufficient number of soldiers. He himself, with four legions in light marching order and eight hundred cavalry, started for the country of the Treveri, because this people neither came to the general assemblies nor were submissive to his authority, and were said to be inciting to hostilities the Germans who dwelt across the Rhine.

3. This state is by far the most powerful of all the Gallic nations in cavalry, and has vast forces of infantry, and, as we have explained above, borders on the Rhine. In this state two men were rivals for the first place in the tribe—Indutiomarus and Cingetorix. The latter of these, as soon as the arrival of Cæsar and his legions was known, came to the general, assured him that he and all his adherents would always be dutiful to, and would never abandon the friendship of, the Roman people, and informed him of what was going on among the Treveri

But Indutiomarus began to get together cavalry and infantry, and after secluding those who by reason of their age could not serve in arms within the forest of Arduenna—which is of vast extent, and stretches through the midst of the territory of the Treveri from the river Rhine to the borders of the Remi—commenced to prepare for war. But when several chieftains of that state, influenced by friendship for Cingetorix, and being also alarmed by the arrival of our army, came to Cæsar and began to petition him regarding their own individual affairs, since they were unable to further the interests of the state, Indutiomarus, fearing that he might be abandoned by all, sent ambassadors to Cæsar to say that his object in determining not to leave his countrymen and come to him had been the more easily to keep the state to its allegiance, lest the people should, in their folly, fall away in the absence of all the men of rank : that the state, therefore, was absolutely under his control, and that, with Cæsar's permission, he would come to him in his camp, and would entrust his own fortunes and those of the state to his good faith.

4. Although Cæsar knew very well from what motive these professions were made, and the circumstances which prevented the Gaul from carrying out the plans he had formed, he nevertheless ordered Indutiomarus to come to him with two hundred hostages, that he might not be obliged to waste the summer among the Treveri when he had made all his preparations for the campaign against Britain. When these had been brought in, and among them the chief's son and all his relations, whom Cæsar had asked for expressly, he comforted Indutiomarus, and exhorted him to remain loyal. None the less, however, he summoned the chiefs of the Treveri to him, and reconciled them individually to Cingetorix, for he both thought that Cingetorix deserved this favour at his hands and judged that it was greatly to his own interest that the influence of a man, whose goodwill towards himself he had seen to be so great, should be as powerful as possible among his countrymen. Indutiomarus was very angry that this was done and that his own influence was diminished with his countrymen; and since, even before this, he had held no friendly feelings towards us, he was filled with much fiercer resentment by this grievance.

5. When these matters had been arranged, Cæsar came to Portus Itius with his legions. There he learned that the sixty ships which had been made in the country of the Meldi had been driven back by a storm and could not keep on their course, and had returned to the place from which they had started: he found the rest ready for sea and fitted with every necessary. At the same place mustered cavalry from all Gaul, four thousand in number, and chiefs from all the states, of whom a very few, whose loyalty to himself he had clearly seen, he had decided to leave in Gaul, while he had resolved to take the rest with him as hostages, because he feared disturbance in Gaul when he was away.

6. With the rest came Dumnorix, the Æduan, of whom mention has before been made by us. This man he had especially decided to have with him, because he knew that he was desirous of a revolution, that he was eager to acquire supreme power, and was a man of much spirit, and one possessing great influence among the Gauls. Added to this there was the fact that in the assembly of the Ædui Dumnorix had said that supreme power in the state was conferred on him by Cæsar. The Ædui were much displeased by this saying, but did not dare to send ambassadors to Cæsar, either to refuse to accept him as their ruler or to beg that he might not be appointed. This fact Cæsar had learned from his own friends. Dumnorix first strove by all manner of entreaties to secure that he should be left in Gaul, partly because he was unused to voyages, and feared the sea; partly because, as he said, he was deterred by religious scruples. When he saw that what he asked was steadily refused him, when all hope of obtaining his request was gone, he began to tamper with the chiefs of Gaul, to have interviews with them one by one, and to exhort them to remain on the continent; he attempted to excite their fears; he said that it was not without reason that Gaul was being deprived of all her men of rank; that Cæsar's design was to convey across to Britain and to slay all those whom he feared to put to death in the sight of Gaul. He pledged his honour to the rest, and required an oath from them that they would do with one mind what they knew to be for the advantage of Gaul. All this was communicated to Cæsar by several persons.

7. When Cæsar learned this, because he paid such honour to the Æduan state, he decided that Dumnorix must be repressed and discouraged by all possible means, and that he must take precautions (for he saw that his madness was going rather too far) that the man should be able to do no hurt to himself and the state. Accordingly, during his stay of about twenty-five days in that place—because the north-west wind, which generally blows for a great part of the whole year in these regions, prevented his sailing—he took pains to keep Dumnorix loyal, but still, none the less, to learn all his plans: at last, getting fair weather, he ordered his infantry and cavalry to get on board. But while the attention of all was engaged, Dumnorix, with the cavalry of the Æduí, attempted to leave the camp for home without Cæsar's knowledge. When the news was brought to him, Cæsar interrupted his departure, and, disregarding all other matters, sent a great part of his cavalry to pursue him, and bring him back; and he ordered that he be slain if he offered violence and did not obey, judging that this man would not be likely to act like a rational being in his absence, since he had disregarded his authority when present. When he was called back he began to resist and defend himself by force, and to appeal to the loyalty of his followers, calling out repeatedly that he was a free man and belonged to a free state. His assailants, as they had been ordered to do, surrounded and slew him; but the Æduan cavalry all returned to Cæsar.

8. When these things had been accomplished, leaving Labienus on the continent with three legions and two thousand cavalry to guard the harbours, to see to the supplies of corn, to learn what was going on in Gaul, and to take such measures as time and circumstances should require, he himself, with five legions and a force of cavalry equal to that which he had left on the continent, weighed anchor at sunset, and was wafted on his way by a gentle south-west wind; but the breeze dying away towards midnight, he could not keep on his course, and being carried some distance out by the tide, at daybreak saw Britain far away to the left. Then, again following the turn of the tide, he rowed vigorously, so as to make that part of the island in which he had learned in the previous summer that there was the best landing. And in this operation the spirit of the soldiers

was much to be commended, who, with the heavy-laden transport-ships, never relaxing their labours at the oar, made as good way as the ships of war. They reached Britain with all the ships when it was almost mid-day. No enemy was seen at that place; but, as Cæsar afterwards learned from prisoners, though a strong force had assembled thither, yet, terrified by the vast number of the ships, (which, with the vessels of the previous year, and the private boats which individuals had built for their own convenience, were seen at the same time to the number of eight hundred and more), they had left the shore, and hidden themselves on the heights above.

9. When Cæsar, after landing his army and choosing a suitable place for his camp, had learned from prisoners where the forces of the enemy had taken up their position, he left ten cohorts and three hundred cavalry beside the sea to protect the ships, and, in the course of the third watch, marched against the enemy, feeling the less anxiety about his ships, inasmuch as he had left them at anchor on a gently-rising and open shore, and he placed Q. Atrius in command of the guard of the ships. He himself, after marching about twelve miles in the night, came in sight of the forces of the enemy. They advanced as far as the river with their chariots and cavalry, and began from the higher ground to prevent our men from crossing, and to engage them in battle. They were driven back by the cavalry, and hid themselves in the woods, having found a position very strongly fortified both by nature and human labour—this, as it seemed, they had prepared some time before, on account of their own internal feuds—for all entrances to it were blocked by numbers of felled trees. They themselves fought in small bodies under cover of the woods, and prevented our men from entering their works. But the soldiers of the seventh legion, locking their shields and throwing a mound up against the barricade, took the place, and drove them out of the woods at the cost of a few wounds to themselves. But Cæsar forbade his men to follow them to any great distance in their flight, both because he was ignorant of the nature of the country, and because the day was now far spent, and he wished time to be left for fortifying a camp.

10. On the following day in the morning he sent his infantry and cavalry in three divisions in flying column to follow up

those who had fled. When they had proceeded to a considerable distance so that now only the rear guard was in sight, horsemen came from Q. Atrius to Cæsar to tell him that on the previous night a very violent storm had sprung up, and that almost all the ships had been dashed together and cast up on the shore, because, as he said, the anchors and ropes did not hold, nor could the sailors and steersmen stand the violence of the storm: and that in consequence of these collisions much damage had been sustained by the ships.

11. When he learned this disaster, Cæsar ordered the legions and cavalry to be recalled and to fight as they fell back, while he himself returned to the ships. He saw with his own eyes very much what he had learned from the messengers and despatches, so that, while about forty ships had been lost, it seemed nevertheless that the rest could be repaired, though with great trouble. Accordingly he selected skilled workmen from the legions, and ordered others to be sent for from the continent: he writes to Labienus to commence as many ships as possible with the legions which are with him. He himself, although it was a work involving much labour and difficulty, decided that it was best that all the ships should be drawn up on land and united with the camp in one fortification. In these operations he spent about ten days, not even the hours of night affording any intermission to the soldiers' work. When the ships had been drawn up and the camp had been strongly fortified, he left the same forces as before to guard the ships; he himself set out to the place from which he had come back. Already, when he had arrived thither, greater forces of the Britons had assembled from all quarters. The supreme command and management of the war had been conferred by the general assembly on Cassivellaunus, whose territories a river which is called the Tamesis separates from the states on the coast at a distance of some eighty miles from the sea. Continual wars had been carried on between him and the other states in former times, but the Britons in their alarm at our arrival had set him in command over the whole war.

12. The interior of Britain is inhabited by peoples of whom they themselves say that it is handed down by tradition that they were born in the island. The country along the coast is

inhabited by those who, through love of plunder and fighting, have come over from Belgium (almost all of whom are called by the name of the state to which they belonged when they came to that country), and after making their attack have stayed there and begun to cultivate the land. There is a very dense population, and there are very numerous houses, almost exactly like those of Gaul, and a great number of cattle. For money they use either a gold coinage or iron bars adjusted to a certain weight. In this country tin is found in the inland districts, iron in those on the coast, but of this there is but a scanty supply: the copper they use is imported. There is timber of every kind as in Gaul, except beech and pine. They do not think it lawful to eat the hare, the hen, or the goose; however, they keep these animals for their fancy and pleasure. The country is more temperate than Gaul, the cold being less severe.

13. The island is triangular in shape, one side of it facing Gaul. Of this side one corner, the one by Cantium, at which almost all the ships from Gaul touch, looks to the east: the lower corner faces the south. This part extends about five hundred miles. A second side trends towards Spain and the west, and on this side is Hibernia, less by a half, it is estimated, than Britain; but the passage is about as long to this island as is the passage from Gaul to Britain. In the middle of the passage between the two countries is an island called Mona: several smaller islands besides are supposed to lie near, and about these islands some have written that at the time of the winter solstice there is night for thirty successive days. About this we discovered nothing in our investigations except that by accurate measurements with the water-clock we ascertained that the nights were shorter than on the continent. The length of this side is, according to their estimate, seven hundred miles. The third side fronts the north, and facing this division there is no land, but the corner of this side looks directly towards Germany. This is supposed to be about eight hundred miles in length. Thus the whole island is about two thousand miles round.

14. Of all these peoples by far the most civilized are those who inhabit Cantium, a district the whole of which borders on the sea; and their customs are not very different from those of

Gaul. The inland peoples as a rule do not sow corn, but subsist on milk and flesh, and are clad in skins. But all the Britons stain themselves with woad, which produces a blue colour, and thus they are more alarming to look on in battle ; and they wear their hair long and are shaved all over their body except on the head and the upper lip. Parties of ten and twelve have wives among them in common, and especially brothers associated with brothers, and parents with children ; but the offspring of the women are considered to be the children of the man to whom each was as a virgin first married.

15. The cavalry of the enemy and their charioteers fiercely attacked our cavalry on the march, with the result, however, that our men proved superior at all points and drove them into the woods and hills ; but after slaying a great number of them, they followed them up too eagerly and lost some of their men. But the enemy, after some time had elapsed, while our men were off their guard and busied in fortifying the camp, suddenly sallied from the woods, and charging those who had been posted on guard before the camp, fought fiercely ; and when two cohorts were sent to their aid by Cæsar, and these too the first cohorts of two legions, and had taken up their position with a very small space left between them, the Britons with the greatest boldness dashed through the midst of our men, who were terrified by this strange kind of fighting, and got back in safety from among them. On that day Q. Laberius Durus, a tribune of the soldiers, was slain. The enemy were driven back when several cohorts had been sent up.

16. In all the fighting of this kind, as the struggle was carried on under the eyes of all and in front of the camp, it was seen that our men were ill-fitted, on account of the weight of their armour, to cope with an enemy of this nature, because they could neither press them when they retired, nor dared to leave their standards ; that the cavalry, moreover, were exposed to great peril in engaging in battle, because the enemy often retreated even deliberately, and when they had drawn our men to some little distance from the legions, leaped from their chariots and fought on foot, to our great disadvantage. Moreover the manner of fighting of their cavalry brought equal and the same peril upon us when retreating and when pursuing. And besides

this was the circumstance that they never fought in close array, but scattered and at wide intervals, and kept their detachments separate, and relieved one another in succession, and vigorous and fresh men succeeded those who were wearied.

17. On the following day the enemy took up their positions on the hills a long way from the camp, and began to show themselves in scattered bodies, and to provoke our cavalry to battle with less spirit than on the day before. But at noon, when Cæsar had sent three legions and all his cavalry on a foraging expedition with Gaius Trebonius his lieutenant, they suddenly rushed from all sides upon the foragers with such fury as not to refrain from attacking the very standards and legions. Our men, charging them fiercely, drove them back, and did not cease from pursuing them until the cavalry, sure of being supported, since they saw the legions behind them, drove the enemy in headlong rout and slew a great number of them, and gave them no chance of getting together or of rallying and leaping down from their chariots. In consequence of this rout, the auxiliaries which had assembled from all quarters forthwith departed, nor after that time did the enemy ever contend against us with their full strength.

18. Cæsar, learning their plan of campaign, led his army to the river Tamesis, in the territories of Cassivellaunus, which river can in all its length be crossed on foot in one place only, and there with difficulty. When he had come thither, he observed that a strong force of the enemy was drawn up near the other bank of the river. The bank, moreover, had been fortified by sharp stakes fixed in front of it, and stakes of the same kind driven in below the water were covered by the river. When he had learned these facts from prisoners and deserters, Cæsar sent forward his cavalry and ordered the legions to follow immediately. But with such speed and vigour did the soldiers charge, though only their heads were above water, that the enemy could not resist the onset of the legions and the cavalry, and left the banks and took to flight.

19. As we have explained above, Cassivellaunus gave up all hope of facing us in the field, and sending away his superabundant forces, having about four thousand of his charioteers left, he observed our marches, and withdrew a little from the beaten

tracks, and concealed himself in rough and woody places, and drove the cattle and people from the fields into the woods in those districts through which he had learned that we were about to march; and whenever our cavalry had spread over the fields in order to pillage and plunder more freely, he would send out his charioteers from all the roads and byways, and engage our cavalry to their very great peril, and prevent them from wandering too far through their fear of this. The only course remaining to Cæsar was not to suffer them to go to any great distance from the line of march of the legions, and only to injure the enemy in laying waste their fields, and causing conflagrations, as much as the soldiers of his legions could manage with great trouble while on the march.

20. Meanwhile the Trinobantes, almost the strongest community in those parts, (from whom had come to Cæsar in the continent of Gaul, trusting to his good faith, a young man, Mandubracius, whose father had possessed the chief power in that community, and had been slain by Cassivellaunus, while he himself had only avoided death by flight,) sent ambassadors to Cæsar and promised to surrender to him and carry out all his orders: they begged of him to defend Mandubracius from the outrages of Cassivellaunus, and to send him to his state, to rule over it and take the supreme power. Cæsar demanded from them forty hostages and corn for his army, and sent Mandubracius to them. They quickly obeyed his commands, and sent hostages to the required number, and corn.

21. When he had taken the Trinobantes under his protection, and preserved them from any outrage at the hands of his soldiers, the Cenimagni, the Segontiaci, the Ancalites, the Bibroci, and the Cassi, sent embassies and surrendered to Cæsar. He learned from them that the chief town of Cassivellaunus was not far from that place, and was protected by forests and swamps, and in it a considerable number of people and cattle was assembled. Now, the Britons give the name of a town to a place when they have fortified dense woods with a rampart and ditch, and thither they are wont to assemble to escape an attack from an enemy. He marched to this place with his legions: he found the place very strongly fortified, both by nature and human labour. However, he hastened to attack it vigorously on two

sides. The enemy held them in check for a short time, but could not withstand the onset of our soldiers, and rushed out of the other side of the town. A great number of cattle was found there, and many of the enemy were caught and slain in their flight.

22. While these events were occurring in this part of the country, Cassivellaunus sent messengers to Cantium, which we have above described as being close to the sea, over which district four kings ruled, Cingetŏrix, Carvilius, Taximagŭlus and Segŏvax; and ordered them to collect all their forces, and to attack on a sudden and besiege the encampment where the fleet was. When they reached the camp, our men sallied out, and after slaying a great many of them and capturing a leader of noble rank, one Lugotŏrix, retired without loss. When the news of this battle was brought to Cassivellaunus, as he had suffered so many losses, as his country had been devastated, and, more than all, because he was troubled by the defection of the other states, he sent ambassadors to Cæsar to treat for peace through Commius, the Atrebatian. As Cæsar had decided to winter on the continent on account of some sudden risings in Gaul, and as there was not much of the summer left, and he perceived that this time could easily be wasted altogether, he required hostages, and settled what tribute Britain should pay every year to the Roman people; and he expressly forbade Cassivellaunus to injure Mandubracius or the Trinobantes.

23. When he had received the hostages he led his army back to the sea. He found the ships repaired. When they had been launched, both because he had a great number of prisoners and because some ships had been lost in the storm, he resolved to carry his army back in two transits. And it so fell out that out of all this great number of vessels in so many voyages not a single ship of all those which were being used for carrying soldiers was lost either in this or in the previous year, but that of those which were sent to him empty from the continent —viz., both those which had made the first crossing, and had landed their soldiers, and those which Labienus had afterwards caused to be made, in number sixty—very few made the appointed place, and almost all the rest were driven back. And when Cæsar had in vain waited for these for some time, that he

might not be prevented from sailing by the time of year, since the equinox was drawing near, he of necessity crowded his soldiers rather more closely than usual; and getting exceedingly calm weather, having cast off from his moorings at the beginning of the second watch, he reached land at early dawn, and got all his ships across in safety.

24. When he had beached his ships, and held an assembly of the Gauls at Samarobrīva, he was compelled because the yield of the harvests had been somewhat scanty in that year on account of drought, to station his army in winter quarters otherwise than in previous years, and to distribute his legions among various states. One of them he intrusted to his lieutenant Gaius Fabius, to be led into the country of the Mŏrīni; a second to Q. Cicero, to be led into the country of the Nervii; a third to L. Roscius, to be led into the country of the Esubii; a fourth he ordered to winter under T. Labienus on the confines of the Treveri: three he stationed among the Belgæ, and in command of these he placed Marcus Crassus, his quæstor, and the lieutenants L. Munatius Plancus and Gaius Trebonius. He sent one legion, which he had levied last of all on the other side of the Padus, and five cohorts, into the country of the Eburones, the greatest part of which lies between the Mosa and the Rhine, a people who were governed by Ambiorix and Catuvolcus. He ordered his lieutenants Q. Titurius Sabinus and L. Aurunculeius Cotta to take the command of these troops. By thus distributing his legions he thought that he could best remedy the scarcity of corn. And nevertheless the winter quarters of all these legions, except the one which he had given to Lucius Roscius to be led into the most loyal and peaceful part of the country, were within a hundred miles of each other. Meanwhile, till he knew that the legions were stationed and the winter quarters fortified, he determined himself to remain in Gaul.

25. There was among the Carnutes one Tasgetius, a man born of a very high family, whose ancestors had held sovereign power in their state. Cæsar had restored to this prince the position which his ancestors had occupied because of his excellent qualities and the goodwill he showed to himself, and also because in all his wars he had enjoyed the greatest benefit from his assistance. This man, when now in the third year of his

reign, his enemies murdered, in the presence of many men of the state, and with their sanction. The matter was reported to Cæsar, and fearing that, because the matter affected many, the state might revolt at the instigation of these persons, he ordered L. Plancus with his legion to set out promptly from Belgium for the country of the Carnutes, and to winter there; and he gave orders to seize and send to him those persons by whose agency he had learned that Tasgetius had been murdered. Meanwhile he was informed by all the lieutenants and quæstors to whom he had intrusted legions, that they had reached their winter quarters and fortified their positions.

26. About fifteen days after they got into winter quarters a sudden rising and revolt was caused by Ambiŏrix and Catuvolcus, who though they had met Sabinus and Cotta on the borders of their territory, and had brought supplies of corn into the camp, instigated by messengers from Indutiomarus the Treveran, roused their people, suddenly overpowered the men sent to cut wood, and came in great force to attack the camp. When our men had quickly got under arms, and had manned the rampart, and, sending out the Spanish horse from one side, had got the best of a cavalry skirmish, the enemy, despairing of success, drew off their men from the attack. Then they called aloud after their fashion, that some one of our men should go out to confer with them; for they had, they said, matters concerning the interests of both parties which they wished to speak of, and by this they hoped that the quarrel could be adjusted.

27. Gaius Arpineius, a Roman knight, a friend of Q. Titurius, and one Quintus Junius from Spain, who already before this time had been wont at Cæsar's bidding to make frequent visits to Ambiŏrix, were sent for the purpose of having a conference with them. Ambiŏrix addressed them in these terms: He confessed that he was deeply in Cæsar's debt for his acts of kindness towards him, in that by his aid he had been freed from the tribute which he had been wont to pay to the Aduatuci, his neighbours, and in that both his son and his brother's son, whom the Aduatuci had kept among them in chains and slavery when they were sent as hostages, had been restored to him by Cæsar. He had not done what he had done in besieging the camp either in accordance with his judgment, or of his own free will, but

under compulsion from his state, for his power was of such a nature that the people had no less authority over him than he had over them. Now the cause why the state had made war was that they could not resist the sudden conspiracy of the Gauls. This he could prove easily by his own insignificance, because he was not so ignorant as to hope to be able to overcome the Roman people with his forces; but one plan had been concerted by all Gaul, and this day had been appointed for an attack upon all Cæsar's winter quarters, so that no legion might be able to come to the aid of any other legion. As Gauls they could not easily refuse Gauls, especially when measures seemed to have been concerted for the recovery of their common liberty. Since then, as regarded his duty to his country, he had done enough for them, he now had regard to his duty in return for the good offices of Cæsar: out of regard for the ties of hospitality he warned and implored Titurius to consider his own safety and that of his soldiers. A great force of Germans had been hired and had crossed the Rhine, and this force would be with them in two days. It was for them to decide whether they would choose, before the neighbouring peoples knew what was going on, to withdraw their men from the winter quarters and lead them either to Cicero or to Labienus, of whom one was about fifty miles away from them, the other a little more. He promised, and confirmed his promise by an oath, that he would give them a safe passage through his territories. In acting thus he was both consulting the interests of his state, because it would be relieved of the burthen of the winter quarters, and he was also showing gratitude to Cæsar in return for his good offices towards him. When he had made this speech Ambiŏrix went away.

28. Arpineius and Junius related what they had heard to the lieutenants. They were alarmed by the unexpected state of affairs, and though these words were spoken by an enemy they thought that they should not be disregarded, and they were especially troubled because it was scarcely credible that an obscure and insignificant state like that of the Eburones had dared of its own accord to make war upon the Roman people. Accordingly they laid the matter before their council of war, and a warm discussion ensued. Lucius Aurunculeius and a

considerable number of tribunes of the soldiers and centurions of the first rank thought that no step should be taken hastily, and that they should not leave their winter quarters without Cæsar's orders, and they pointed out that any forces of the Germans, however great, could be resisted in well-fortified winter quarters. A proof of this was the fact that they had met the first charge of the enemy with the greatest bravery, and had even inflicted great loss upon them; they were not badly off for provisions; meanwhile, assistance would come from the nearest winter quarters and from Cæsar; finally, what could be more contemptible or shameful than to take the advice of an enemy in considering matters of the highest importance?

29. On the other side, Titurius vigorously argued that they would act too late when stronger forces of the enemy assembled with the Germans in addition, or when some terrible disaster had happened to the nearest winter quarters. The time for deliberation was short. He believed that Cæsar had already set out for Italy, for otherwise neither would the Carnutes have taken the step of slaying Tasgetius, nor would the Eburones—were he still in the country—attack our camp with such contempt. He regarded not the advice of an enemy, but the situation: the Rhine was close at hand; the death of Ariovistus and our former victories were a cause of great chagrin to the Germans; Gaul was furious because, after being subjected to so many humiliations and having its former fame in war extinguished, it had been made subject to the rule of the Roman people. Finally, who could believe that Ambiorix had resorted to such a plan without definite grounds to go upon? His own advice was safe in either event; if nothing untoward happened, they would reach the next legion without any danger; if all Gaul was in league with the Germans, their only hope of safety lay in speed. What could be the result of the advice of Cotta and those who disagreed with him (the speaker)? For if there were no present danger in following it, assuredly in a lengthened siege they must face the fear of hunger.

30. When both sides of the question had thus been argued, and a strenuous opposition was being offered by Cotta and the centurions of the first rank, 'Have your way, if you will,'

exclaimed Sabinus, and that in a loud voice so that most of the soldiers could hear him ; 'I am not the man,' said he, 'to be most frightened of you all by the fear of death. These will know. If anything untoward happens they will demand an explanation from you ; for, if it were allowed by you, on the day after to-morrow they would effect a junction with the nearest winter quarters, and would be facing the chances of war in common with the others, and not be perishing by the sword or by hunger far from all the rest in banishment and isolation.'

31. The council rose. The members seized both the opponents by the hands, and implored them not to make their position one of extreme peril by their disputes and obstinacy. The situation was free from difficulty whether they remained or went, provided only all felt alike and adopted one plan ; on the other hand, they saw no chance of safety if there was dissension. The business was protracted by argument till midnight. At last Cotta was moved and yielded, and the counsel of Sabinus prevailed. Orders were given for a start at daybreak. The rest of the night was spent without sleep, as every soldier was looking over his things to see what he could carry with him, what part of the furniture of his winter quarters he would be compelled to leave behind. Every manner of thing was devised so that there was no remaining without danger, and so that there was even an increase of their danger owing to the fatigue and long watching of the soldiers. So at daybreak they set out from the camp like men who believed that Ambiorix, who had given the advice, was not an enemy, but a true friend, in a very long file and with a great quantity of baggage.

32. But the enemy, when they had received intimation of their departure from the noise at night and their not taking rest, planted ambuscades at two points in the woods, in a favourable and secluded spot, at a distance of about two miles, and awaited the arrival of the Romans ; and when the greater part of the column had descended into a deep hollow, they suddenly showed themselves on both sides of that valley, and began to press on our rear, and to prevent those in front from ascending, and to engage our men in this most unfavourable position.

33. Then indeed Titurius, inasmuch as he had made no

previous preparations, was all confused, and rushed to and fro, and tried to draw up the cohorts; but he did even this timidly and in such a way that all his faculties were seen to fail him, as is generally wont to be the case with those who are compelled to make their plans at the time of action. But Cotta, who had thought that this might happen on the way, and for this reason had not counselled leaving the camp, in no respect neglected to do what he could for the common safety; and in addressing and exhorting the soldiers he performed the duties of a general, those of a soldier in fighting. Since, on account of the length of the column, they could not very easily attend to everything themselves and see what had to be done in each place, they ordered the officers to give the word to leave the baggage and form square. Though this plan was not blameworthy in the face of such a crisis, still the result was disastrous, for it both diminished the confidence of our men and made the enemy more vigorous in their onslaught, because it was seen that this was not done except under pressure of great fear and anxiety. There, moreover, happened that which was bound to happen: the soldiers on all sides left their standards, and hastened to seek and snatch from the baggage whatever each of them held most precious, and there arose a babel of weeping and shouting.

34. But the barbarians were at no loss what to do, for their leaders ordered their officers to give the word all along the line that no one was to leave his place, that the booty was theirs, and that all that the Romans had abandoned was reserved for them; therefore they must understand that all depended on victory. Our men were a match for them both in bravery and in readiness to fight; and although they were deserted by leader and by fortune, they still relied for safety on their valour alone, and as often as each cohort charged, a great number of the enemy fell in that quarter. Perceiving this, Ambiorix ordered the word to be given that his men were to throw their weapons from a distance, and not to come to close quarters, and to retire wherever the Romans charged them; saying that from the lightness of their armour and their daily practice no harm could be done to them, and that they were in turn to pursue the enemy as they returned to their standards.

35. These instructions were carefully observed by them, and whenever any cohort left the square and charged, the enemy retreated with the utmost speed. Meanwhile it necessarily happened that the position they had occupied was left undefended, and that missiles were received on the side exposed. When again they began to return to the place from which they had charged, they were surrounded both by those of the enemy who had retreated, and by those who were nearest to them; on the other hand, if they chose to remain in their places in the square, there was no opportunity left for displaying valour, nor, crowded together as they were, could they avoid the weapons that were hurled at them. However, though they had to contend against so many disadvantages, and many wounds were received, they still resisted; and though the day was far spent and the battle had lasted from dawn till the eighth hour, they did nothing unworthy of them. Then Titus Balventius, who had in the previous year been a centurion of the first rank, a brave man and much respected, was pierced through both thighs with a javelin; Q. Lucanius, a soldier of the same rank, was slain fighting bravely while aiding his son, who was surrounded; and L. Cotta, the lieutenant, while encouraging all the cohorts and ranks, was wounded right in the face by a sling.

36. Sore troubled by all these events, Q. Titurius, having seen Ambiorix some distance off cheering on his men, sent his interpreter, Gn. Pompeius to him, to ask him to spare him and his army. Ambiorix, when appealed to, answered that if Titurius wished to speak to him he might do so; he hoped that he would obtain from the army what he asked regarding the safety of his soldiers; but no harm would be done to himself, and to this he pledged his word. Titurius communicated his answer to the wounded Cotta, suggesting that, if he approved, they should leave the fight, and confer with Ambiorix; he hoped that he could be persuaded to grant safety to themselves and the soldiers. Cotta declared that he could not meet an enemy in arms, and persisted in his refusal.

37. Sabinus ordered the tribunes of the soldiers whom at the time he had round him, and the centurions of the first rank, to follow him, and when he had come within a certain distance of Ambiorix, being ordered to cast down his arms, he did as he was

bidden, and ordered his men to do likewise. Meantime, while they are discussing the conditions of surrender, and a conversation—purposely somewhat long—was being entered into by Ambiorix, he was gradually surrounded and slain. Then, indeed, the Gauls raised a shout of victory after their fashion, and uttered loud cries, and, rushing upon our men, threw the ranks into confusion. Then L. Cotta was slain fighting, together with most of his soldiers. The remnant made their way to the camp which they had left. One of these, L. Petrosidius, the bearer of the eagle, being hard pressed by a host of enemies, threw the eagle inside the rampart, and, fighting with great bravery, was himself slain in front of the camp. These men, though with difficulty, withstood the attack till nightfall; but at night, giving up all hope of safety, they slew each other to a man. A few who escaped from the battle, wandering at haphazard in the woods, succeeded in reaching the lieutenant T. Labienus in his winter quarters, and informed him of what had taken place.

38. Elated by this victory, Ambiorix immediately set out with his cavalry into the country of the Aduatuci, who lived on the borders of his kingdom, and made no stop day or night, and ordered his infantry to follow him. After relating what had happened, and stirring up the Aduatuci, on the following day he reached the country of the Nervii, and exhorted them not to let slip the opportunity of freeing themselves for ever, and taking vengeance on the Romans for the wrongs that they had suffered. He told them that two lieutenants had been slain, and that a great part of their army had fallen; there was no difficulty, he said, in overwhelming and massacring the legion which was wintering with Cicero, and he promised that he would aid them in this enterprise. By this speech he easily persuaded the Nervii.

39. Accordingly, they immediately sent messengers in all directions, to the Ceutrŏnes, the Grudii, the Levăci, the Pleumoxii, and the Geidumni, all of whom were subject to them, collected as large a force as possible, and unexpectedly hastened towards Cicero's winter quarters, for the news of the death of Titurius had not yet reached him. To him also it happened, as it was bound to do, that some soldiers who had

gone in various directions into the forest to get wood and materials for the fortifications were cut off by the sudden arrival of the cavalry. When these had been surrounded, the Eburones, the Nervii, and the Aduatuci in great force, and the allies and clients of all these peoples, began to attack the legion. Our men quickly got under arms and manned the wall. That day was got through with difficulty, because the enemy depended entirely on the speed of their movements, and thought that they would ever be victorious if they only gained this victory.

40. Despatches were immediately sent to Cæsar by Cicero, great rewards being offered to any who should carry them through ; but all the roads were beset, and the messengers were intercepted. In the night there were erected with incredible speed quite a hundred and twenty towers, made of the timber which the soldiers had collected for the fortifications, and all things which seemed to be lacking to the works were completed. On the following day the enemy, having collected far greater forces, besieged the camp, and filled up the ditch. Our men defended themselves in the same manner as on the day before. The same struggle went on day after day. There was no intermission of their toil at any part of the night; no chance of resting was given even to the sick and wounded. Whatever was needed against the next day's attack was got together in the night; numbers of stakes were burnt to a point; a great quantity of mural javelins was prepared; turrets were boarded over; battlements and breastworks were woven with osiers; Cicero himself, though he was in most delicate health, did not even leave himself the night for repose, so much so that by the spontaneous pressure and entreaties of the soldiers he was compelled to spare himself.

41. Then those leaders and chiefs of the Nervii that had permission to come to speech with Cicero, and reasons for friendship with him, said that they wished to confer with him. When an opportunity was granted them, they used the same arguments that Ambiorix had urged with Titurius: All Gaul, they said, was in arms ; the Germans had crossed the Rhine ; the winter quarters of Cæsar and the other generals were being besieged. They told him also of the death of Sabinus, and

they pointed to the presence of Ambiorix to gain credence for their story. They said that Cicero and his army were in error if they hoped for any aid from men who felt no confidence in their own position: still, they were, they said, so disposed towards Cicero and the Roman people that they refused them nothing but winter quarters, and were unwilling that this custom should become established by time; as far as depended on them, they might leave their winter quarters unharmed, and depart without fear to whatever region they pleased. To all this Cicero made but one answer, that it was not the custom of the Roman people to accept terms from enemies with arms in their hands; but if they would lay down their arms, let them use his intercession and send envoys to Cæsar: he hoped that through his wonted fairness they would obtain what they asked.

42. Disappointed in this hope, the Nervii surrounded the winter quarters with a rampart nine feet high and a ditch fifteen feet wide. This they had both learned from us to do through the practice of former years, and were, moreover, being instructed by some prisoners from our army; but having no supply of tools of such a nature as to be suitable for this work, they cut out the sods with their swords, and laboured hard to dig up the soil with their hands and to carry it away in their cloaks. And from this circumstance their numbers could be realized, for in less than three hours they completed a fortification fifteen thousand feet round, and on the succeeding days they began to prepare and make towers as high as the Roman rampart, and grappling irons, and mantlets, as the prisoners above mentioned had taught them.

43. On the seventh day of the siege a strong wind sprang up, and they began to throw red-hot balls of soft clay from slings, and javelins with blazing material fastened to them, upon the huts, which, after the Gallic fashion, had been roofed with straw. These quickly caught fire, and through the strength of the wind spread the flames to every part of the camp. The enemy with loud shouts, as if the victory were already won and assured, began to advance their towers and mantlets, and to climb the rampart by means of ladders. But so great was the courage of the soldiers, and such their presence of mind, that, though they were being scorched on all sides by the flames, and overwhelmed

by a shower of missiles, and knew that all their baggage and all their property was burning, not only did no one leave the rampart in order to retire from the fight, but hardly anyone even looked behind him, and even under these circumstances they all fought with the greatest vigour and bravery. This day was by far the most trying that our men experienced ; but still it had this result, that on that day a very great number of the enemy was wounded and slain, as they had crowded together at the very foot of the rampart, and those furthest away did not allow those in front to retreat. When the fire slackened a little indeed, and one of the enemy's towers was in a certain quarter advanced and brought close up to the wall, the centurions of the third cohort retired from the place where they were posted, and withdrew all their men, and with voice and gesture began to call upon the enemy, if they wished, to come in ; but none of them dared to advance. Then stones were showered from all sides, and they were dislodged, and the tower was set on fire.

44. There were in that legion two very brave men, centurions who were now approaching the first rank, T. Pulio and L. Vorenus. These men had perpetual disputes between themselves as to which should be preferred, and all through their service contended for precedence with the keenest rivalry. One of these, Pulio, when the battle was raging fiercely right up to the walls, cried out : 'Why do you hesitate, Vorenus ? or for what opportunity of proving your valour are you waiting ? This day shall settle our disputes.' When he had thus spoken, he went forth outside the defences and attacked the enemy where they seemed thickest. And in truth neither did Vorenus keep within the rampart, but fearing what all would think of him, he followed the other close. When but a short space was left between him and the enemy, Pulio hurled his pike against them and pierced one of their number who was running forward to engage him : when he was stricken, and lifeless, his comrades covered him with their shields, and all showered missiles on their foe and cut off his retreat. Pulio's shield was pierced through, and a javelin fixed in his belt. This mischance turned the sheath of his sword behind him and stayed his right hand when he tried to draw his sword, and the enemy closed

round him as he was thus embarrassed. His rival Vorenus ran to his aid, and assisted him in his distress. The whole crowd immediately left Pulio, and turned its attention to him; for they believed that the other had been mortally wounded by the dart. Vorenus fought hand to hand with his sword, and after slaying one of them drove the others before him a little way; but as he pressed on too eagerly, he fell headlong into a hollow in the ground. When he in his turn was surrounded, Pulio aided him, and both of them, having slain a great many of the enemy, made their way back to the defences amid the greatest applause. So did fortune in this rivalry and contest direct the action of each in turn, that each of these rivals was the means of saving and aiding the other, and it was not possible to decide which seemed superior to the other in valour.

45. The more trying and dangerous the siege grew from day to day (and this more especially because a great number of the soldiers had been disabled by wounds, and so it resulted that very few defenders remained), the more frequently were messengers with despatches sent to Cæsar, some of whom were captured in sight of our soldiers, and put to death with torture. There was one solitary Nervian within the camp, by name Vertĭco, a man of good family, who, at the very beginning of the siege, had taken refuge with Cicero, and had given him the most convincing proofs of his loyalty. He persuaded a slave by the promise of his liberty, and of great rewards, to carry despatches to Cæsar. These he carried out wrapped in the shaft of a javelin, and, a Gaul himself, mixed with the Gauls without exciting any suspicion, and reached Cæsar. Through him the danger of Cicero and his legion was heard of.

46. Having received these despatches about the eleventh hour of the day, Cæsar immediately sent a messenger into the country of the Bellovăci to his quæstor, M. Crassus, whose winter quarters were twenty-five miles distant from him, and ordered the legion to start in the middle of the night, and to come to him with all speed. Crassus started as soon as he received the message. He sent another to his lieutenant, Gaius Fabius, to tell him to lead his legion into the territories of the Atrebătes, through which he himself had to march. He wrote to Labienus to come with his legion to the lands of the

Nervii, if he could do so without detriment to the public interest. He did not think it expedient to wait for the remainder of his army, as it was too far off ; he collected about four hundred cavalry from the neighbouring winter quarters.

47. About the third hour he was informed by the advanced guard of the approach of Crassus, and on that day he marched twenty miles. He placed Crassus in command of Samarobriva, and assigned to him a legion, because he was leaving in that town the baggage of the army, the hostages of the various states, his state papers, and all the supplies of corn which he had conveyed thither that he might be able to live through the winter. Fabius, acting on his instructions, and making very fair speed, met him on the march with his legion. Labienus, when informed of the death of Sabinus and the destruction of the cohorts, fearing, as all the forces of the Treveri had come against him, that if he went forth from his winter quarters like a fugitive he could not resist the attacks of the enemy, especially of an enemy whom he knew to be elated by their recent victory, sent back despatches to Cæsar to tell him how dangerous it would be for him to lead his legion out of its winter quarters ; he gave a full account of what had taken place among the Eburōnes, and informed him that the whole strength of the infantry and cavalry of the Trevĕri had taken up a position three miles away from his camp.

48. Cæsar approved of his conduct, although he was disappointed in his expectation of having three legions and was reduced to two, and rested all his hopes of securing the safety of all on the speed of his movements. He reached the territories of the Nervii by forced marches. There he learned from prisoners what was going on at Cicero's quarters, and to what a perilous pass things had come. Then he persuaded one of the Gallic horse, by offering him great rewards, to convey a letter to Cicero. He sent one written in the Greek character, that our plans might not be learned by the enemy if the letter was intercepted. He counselled the messenger, if he could not gain access to the camp, to hurl a javelin with the letter bound to the thong over the fortifications. In this letter he wrote that he had started with his legions, and would soon be with Cicero, and exhorted him to keep up the brave defence he had hitherto

maintained. The Gaul, fearing danger, hurled the javelin as directed. The weapon unluckily stuck in a tower, and was not perceived by our men for two days; but on the third day it was seen by a soldier, and was pulled out and taken to Cicero. After perusing it, he read it aloud in an assembly of the soldiers, and inspired all with very great joy. Then the smoke of fires was seen in the distance, and this dispelled all doubts as to the coming of the legions.

49. The Gauls, on learning the truth, abandoned the siege and hastened with all their forces against Cæsar. There were about sixty thousand of them under arms. Cicero, when the opportunity presented itself, asked the same Vertico, whom we have mentioned above, for a Gaul to carry a letter to Cæsar; he warned him to make the journey with caution and diligence; he gave him in the letter the intelligence that all the enemy had left himself, and directed their whole force against him. When this letter was brought to Cæsar, about midnight, he informed his men of it, and strengthened them in mind for the battle. On the following day at dawn he broke up his camp, and, after advancing about four miles, caught sight of a host of the enemy on the other side of a valley and stream. It was a matter of great danger to fight on unfavourable ground with such small forces; and, besides, as he knew that Cicero was relieved of the siege, he thought that he might with a clear conscience abate the speed of his movements. He therefore halted, and fortified his camp in the most advantageous place he could find; and this, although it was naturally small, being intended for scarce seven thousand men, especially as these had no baggage, he nevertheless reduced to the smallest possible compass by making the streets narrow, with the design that he might excite the greatest contempt in the enemy. Meanwhile, he sent scouts in all directions, and tried to discover by what route the valley could most conveniently be crossed.

50. On that day some cavalry skirmishes were fought near the river, but both armies remained in the positions they had taking up—the Gauls, because they were waiting for additional forces which had not yet come in; Cæsar, in the hope of being able by a pretence of fear to draw the enemy on to attack him in a position favourable to himself, that he might engage them

on the hither side of the valley before his camp ; and if he could not manage this, that he might cross the valley and the river with less risk after finding out all about the various routes. At daybreak the cavalry of the enemy approached the camp and joined battle with our horse. Cæsar ordered the cavalry to retreat on purpose, and to fall back into the camp ; at the same time he gave orders that the camp should be fortified on all sides with a higher rampart, and the gates blocked up, and that in executing these works there should be as much confusion as possible, and that there should be at the same time a pretence of panic.

51. Drawn on by all these proceedings, the enemy led their forces across the stream and drew up their line in an unfavourable position, and, indeed, when our men were withdrawn even from the rampart, they came quite close, and from all sides hurled missiles into our works, and, sending heralds round, bade them proclaim that if anyone — whether Gaul or Roman — wished to come over to them before the third hour, he might do so without danger, but that after that time there would be no chance of doing so ; and indeed so great was their contempt for our men, that, since the gates to all appearance had been blocked up, though only with single courses of turf, because they thought that they could not burst through there, some began to tear down the rampart with their hands, while others began to fill up the ditches. Then Cæsar, sallying forth from all the gates, and sending out his cavalry, quickly put the enemy to flight so completely that not one stopped to fight, and he slew a great number of them, and stripped all of their arms.

52. Fearing to pursue them to any great distance, because woods and swamps lay in his way, and he saw that no chance of inflicting even the smallest loss on them remained, without any losses among his own forces he reached Cicero on the same day. He wondered at the towers that had been set up, at the mantlets and other siege-works of the enemy. When the legion was paraded, he perceived that scarcely one soldier out of ten was without a wound ; from all these circumstances he could see at what terrible risk and with what desperate bravery the defence had been conducted. He warmly commended

Cicero, as his services deserved, and also the legion; he addressed individually the centurions and the tribunes of the soldiers, who, as he had learned from Cicero, had displayed great bravery. He got more accurate information from the prisoners of the disaster of Sabinus and Cotta. On the following day he delivered an address, and related all that had happened, and cheered and reassured the soldiers, saying that, as for the loss which had been sustained through the folly and recklessness of the lieutenant, it must be borne with greater equanimity on this account, that since by the grace of the immortal gods and their valour the disaster had been atoned for, there was neither left to the enemy any lasting exultation, nor to themselves too long a grieving.

53. Meanwhile, the news of Cæsar's victory was conveyed with incredible swiftness to Labienus across the country of the Remi, so that, although he was about sixty miles away from Cicero's winter quarters, and Cæsar had reached them after the ninth hour of the day, a shouting arose at the gates of his camp before midnight, by which an intimation of the victory and congratulation thereon was conveyed by the Remi to Labienus. When this news reached the Treviri, Indutiomarus, who had decided to attack the camp of Labienus on the following day, fled away in the night, and led all his forces back into the country of the Treveri. Cæsar sent Fabius with his legion back to his winter quarters; he himself, with three legions, resolved to winter in three winter camps round Samarobriva; and, because such serious disturbances had occurred in Gaul, he decided to remain himself the whole winter with the army. For the disaster of the death of Sabinus having been noised abroad, almost all the states of Gaul were taking counsel concerning war, were sending out envoys and embassies in all directions, and were inquiring what measures the other peoples were adopting, and in what quarter the war was to be commenced, and were holding meetings at night in solitary places. And Cæsar had scarcely any interval in that whole winter free from anxiety, or without receiving some intelligence about plotting or commotion among the Gauls. Among these reports, he was informed by Lucius Roscius, whom he had appointed to the command of the thirteenth legion, that a great force of Gauls from the

states which are called Aremorican had assembled to attack him, and were not more than eight miles distant from his winter quarters ; but that they had retired when the news of Cæsar's victory reached them, so precipitately that their departure resembled a flight.

54. But Cæsar summoned the chiefs of all the states to meet him, and at times by alarming them in announcing that he knew all that was going on, at times by his exhortations, he kept a great part of Gaul loyal. The Senones, however, a people which is one of the strongest, and has great influence with the Gauls, with the assent of the whole state, attempted to slay Cavarinus, whom Cæsar had appointed king among them, whose brother Moritasgus had been in possession of the sovereign power at the time of the arrival of Cæsar in Gaul, and whose ancestors had held it before him ; and when he divined their purpose and fled from them, they pursued him to the borders of their territory, and expelled him from his kingdom and his home ; and when they had sent ambassadors to Cæsar to make excuses to him, and he ordered the whole senate to appear before him, they did not obey him. Such an effect did it produce among these barbarians that some had been found to take the lead in making war, and such a revulsion of feeling did it produce in them all, that there was scarcely a single state which was not suspected by us, except the Ædui and the Remi, whom Cæsar always held in special honour, the former for their long-continued and unswerving loyalty to the Roman people, the latter for their recent services in the Gallic war. And I do not know that this is very much to be wondered at, for many reasons, and especially for this one—that these people, who were accustomed to be ranked before all other nations in martial valour, were very much distressed that they had lost that reputation to such an extent as to submit to the sway of the Roman people.

55. Now the Treveri and Indutiomarus, during the whole time of winter, ceased not to send ambassadors across the Rhine, stirring up the tribes, making promises of money, and pointing out that a great part of our army had been destroyed, and a much smaller part remained to be conquered. No German people, however, could be persuaded to cross the Rhine, because

they said they had twice made the attempt—in the war of Ariovistus, and when the Tencteri crossed—and that they would not try their luck any further. Though disappointed in this hope, Indutiomarus began none the less to collect forces and drill them, to get horses together from the neighbouring peoples, to attract exiles and convicts throughout the whole of Gaul to his standard by offering great rewards. And by these measures he had obtained such influence in Gaul that embassies kept flocking to him from all quarters, asking for his favour and friendship on behalf of their states and of themselves.

56. When he perceived that men were coming in spontaneously, that the Senŏnes and Carnūtes on one side were incited to revolt by a consciousness of their guilt, and on the other the Nervii and Aduatuci were preparing for war with the Romans, and that he would have no lack of willing allies, when once he began his advance from his own territories, he summoned an armed assembly. This, according to the custom of the Gauls, is a declaration of war; and to this, by the law of the state, all of mature age are accustomed to assemble in arms, and he among them who comes in last is subjected to all kinds of tortures, and put to death in sight of the multitude. At this assembly he declared Cingetorix, the chief of the other party in the state, and his own son-in-law, who, as we have said above, maintained his loyalty to Cæsar, and had not deserted him, to be a public enemy, and confiscated his property. When this had been done, he announced in the assembly that he had been summoned by the Senŏnes and Carnūtes, and very many other states of Gaul; that he would march to them through the territories of the Remi, and would devastate their lands; and before doing this would attack the camp of Labienus. He instructed them as to what he wished done.

57. Labienus, as he occupied a camp most strongly fortified both by nature and art, had no fear of any danger to himself or his legion, and, indeed, was studying how not to let slip any opportunity of gaining a success. Accordingly, when he learned from Cingetorix and his relations of the speech which Indutiomarus had delivered in the assembly, he sent messengers to the neighbouring states, and summoned cavalry from all sides. He fixed a day on which they were to assemble. Meanwhile

Indutiomarus, with all his cavalry, was almost daily roving about in the neighbourhood of his camp: sometimes for the purpose of reconnoitring the position of the camp, at other times for the purpose of communicating with him or menacing him. All the cavalry used generally to fling weapons inside the rampart. Labienus kept his men inside their lines, and encouraged their belief in his alarm by all means in his power.

58. As Indutiomarus was continuing to approach the camp with a daily growing contempt, in a single night Labienus admitted into the camp the cavalry of all the neighbouring states which he had had summoned, and with such care confined all his men in the camp by means of guards, that the fact could by no possibility be announced or reported to the Treveri. Meanwhile Indutiomarus, according to his daily custom, approached the camp, and there spent a great part of the day; his men hurled missiles, and with many insulting words challenged our men to fight. As no response was made by our soldiers, when it seemed good to them, towards evening, they departed, all scattered and straggling. Suddenly Labienus sent forth all his cavalry from two gates: he gave orders that when the enemy were routed and put to flight (which he saw would happen, as indeed it did), they should all seek Indutiomarus alone, and he forbade them to wound anyone before he saw the chief slain, because he did not wish him to gain time by the delay occasioned by pursuing others, and so escape; he promised great rewards to those who should slay him, and he sent his cohorts in support of the cavalry. Fortune justified his plan, and since all were in search of one man, Indutiomarus was taken in the very ford of the river and slain, and his head was brought back into the camp. The cavalry as they returned pursued and slew all they could. When this affair was reported, all the forces of the Eburōnes and the Nervii which had assembled departed, and after this action Cæsar had considerably greater tranquillity in Gaul.

LATIN AND GREEK GRAMMAR AND COMPOSITION.

Latin Course, the Preceptors'. By B. J. Hayes, M.A. Lond. and Camb. 2s. 6d.

Latin Grammar, The Tutorial. By B. J. Hayes, M.A. Lond and Camb., Gold Medallist in Classics, and W. F. Mason, M.A. Lond., University Exhibitioner. *Fourth Edition.* 3s. 6d.

Latin Grammar, Exercises and Test Questions on the Tutorial. By F. L. D. Richardson, B.A. Lond., and A. E. W. Hazel, LL.D., M.A., B.C.L. 1s. 6d.

Latin Grammar, A Higher. By F. G. Plaistowe, M.A. Camb. and Lond., Gold Medallist in Classics, late Fellow of Queens' College, Cambridge. [*In preparation.*

Latin Composition. With copious Exercises, and Vocabulary to each Exercise. By A. H. Allcroft, M.A. Oxon., and J. H. Haydon, M.A. Camb. and Lond. *Fifth Edition, Revised.* 2s. 6d.

Latin Composition, Higher. By A. H. Allcroft, M.A. Oxon. [*In preparation.*

Greek Course, The Tutorial. [*In preparation.*

Greek Grammar, A Higher. [*In preparation.*

Matriculation and Intermediate Greek. By B. J. Hayes, M.A. Lond. and Camb., and W. F. Mason, M.A. Lond. *Second Edition.* 2s. 6d.

Matriculation Latin. By B. J. Hayes, M.A. Lond. and Camb. *Eighth Edition.* 1s. 6d.

LATIN AND GREEK READERS, ETC.

Latin Reader, The Preceptors'. By E. J. G. FORSE, M.A. Lond. 1s. 6d.

Latin Reader, The Tutorial. With complete Vocabulary. *Third Edition.* 2s. 6d.

Latin Unseens, Advanced. Being a Higher Latin Reader. Edited by H. J. MAIDMENT, M.A. Lond. and Oxon., and T. R. MILLS, M.A. Oxon. 3s. 6d.

Latin Dictionary, The Tutorial. By F. G. PLAISTOWE, M.A. Lond. and Camb., Gold Medallist in Classics, late Fellow of Queens' College, Cambridge. 6s. 6d.

Greek Reader, The Tutorial. By A. WAUGH YOUNG, M.A. Lond. With Notes and Complete Vocabularies. *Second Edition, Enlarged.* 2s. 6d.

Greek Reader, A Higher. A course of 132 Graduated Extracts. *Second Edition.* 3s. 6d.

ROMAN AND GREEK HISTORY.

History of Rome, The Tutorial, to 14 A.D. By A. H. ALLCROFT, M.A. Oxon., and W. F. MASOM, M.A. Lond. With Maps and Index. 3s. 6d.

A History of Rome from 31 B.C. to 96 A.D.: The Early Principate. By A. H. ALLCROFT, M.A. Oxon., and J. H. HAYDON, M.A. Lond. and Camb. *Second Edition.* 3s. 6d.

This work is designed to supplement the *Tutorial History of Rome*, and such text-books as deal only with the Republican Era.

History of Greece, The Tutorial. By W. J. WOODHOUSE, M.A. Professor of Greek in the University of Sydney, late Craven Fellow in the University of Oxford.

[*In preparation.*